

UC-NRLF



\$B 273 600



JANES'
FRENCH GRAMMAR



JUN 30 1899

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

GIFT OF

Pres. Martin Kellogg

Received *Sept.*, 1899.

Accession No. *77336*. Class No. *9842*

533

Shute. Anglo-Saxon Manual. 12mo.	1 50
Skinner. Approximate Computations. 16mo.	1 20
Siglar. English Grammar. 12mo. Boards	70
Taine. English Literature. Condensed for Schools. 12mo.	2 25
White. Classic Literature. 12mo.	2 25
Yonge (Miss). Landmarks of History. I. Ancient, 12mo, 95c.; II. Mediæval, 12mo, \$1.10; III. Modern, 12mo.	1 40

FRENCH.

<i>Æsop</i> . Fables in French. With a Dictionary. 18mo.	0 65
<i>Bibliothèque d'Instruction et de Recréation</i> . A collection of the best works in French Fictitious Literature, for use in American Schools, and published in handsome 12mos. Cloth. Those marked (1) are fitted for readers under sixteen years, those marked (2) for older ones.	
(2) <i>Achard</i> . Clos-Pommier, et les Prisonniers, par Xavier de Maistre	85
(1) <i>Bédolière</i> . Mère Michel. New Vocabulary, by Pylodet.	75
(1) <i>Clement</i> . Biographies des Musiciens Célèbres.	1 40
(2) <i>Erckman-Chatrian</i> . Conscriit de 1813. With Notes.	1 10
(1) <i>Fallet</i> . Princes de l'Art.	1 50
(2) <i>Feuillet</i> . Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre	1 10
(1) <i>Foa</i> . Contes Biographiques. With Vocabulary.	1 00
(1) — Petit Robinson de Paris. With Vocabulary.	85
(1) <i>Macé</i> . Bouchée de Pain. With Vocabulary.	1 25
(1) <i>Porchat</i> . Trois Mois sous la Neige.	85
(1) <i>Pressensé</i> . Rosa. With Vocabulary. By L. Pylodet.	1 25
(1) <i>Saint-Germain</i> . Pour une Epingle. With Vocabulary.	1 00
(2) <i>Sand</i> . Petite Fadette.	1 25
(1) <i>Segur</i> . Contes (Petites Filles Modèles; Les Gouters de la Grand-Mère)	1 00
(2) <i>Souvestre</i> . Philosophe sous les Toits.	75

Copyright, 1900,
by
Henry Holt & Co.,
Publishers,
New York.

1111. 57. 1900

HENRY HOLT & CO., PUBLISHERS,
25 Bond St., New York.

Sadler. Translating English into French. 12mo.....	1 25
----------------------------------------------------	------

55
55
10
60
40
65
50
75

ANNOUNCEMENT.

The author of this book has in preparation a series of Reading Selections, with an adequate Dictionary. It is intended to be printed in one volume with the Grammar, making a complete text-book for classes in French. The Selections will be mostly taken from current literature, and the Dictionary will give both Etymology and Pronunciation.

A

FRENCH GRAMMAR

FOR

COLLEGES, ACADEMIES, SCHOOLS, ETC.

M. Killogg.

WITH A SERIES OF EXERCISES

BY

E. JANES, A.M.



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
F. W. CHRISTERN
BOSTON: SCHENHOF & MÖLLER

COPYRIGHT. 1877,
BY HENRY HOLT.

77336

New York : J. J. Little & Co., Printers,
10 to 20 Astor Place.

PREFACE.



THIS book is not a new "instruction-book," but an attempt at a real grammar of the French language, accompanied by a copious series of exercises. The work is intended for beginners in the study of French, but not for small children, nor for those who desire merely to acquire a few conversational phrases. It is also meant to be a complete text-book, and book of reference, in this subject, and is believed to be far more complete than any heretofore published in English.

The plan of the present work does not include instruction in general grammar, but the learner is supposed to be already acquainted with the use and meaning of ordinary grammatical terms, such as tense, mode, subject, object, noun, article, govern, modify, agree, and the like. All these can perhaps be best learned from Professor Whitney's "Essentials of English Grammar." They form properly no part of the study of French. The Author has endeavored to keep in mind that the office of a grammarian is to describe the facts of a language, not to legislate for it, and also that this description needs abundant illustrations. Numerous examples therefore accompany almost every section, and where the French idiom seems to be

farthest removed from the English, or most difficult for the English-speaking student to apprehend, the examples sometimes occupy a good deal of space.

Repetition is not a part of the plan, even of the Exercises. The judicious teacher is the best judge of how often each class may require to review, and will find no difficulty in constructing oral exercises adapted to the capacity and the needs of his pupils.

Special attention is asked to the fact that the Exercises, as also the examples in the body of the Grammar, are largely drawn from the works of the best French writers, whose names are frequently appended. This is thought to be a feature of considerable importance.

The Latin has been used as far as seemed expedient, under the impression that most of those who will use this book will have some slight knowledge of Latin. This is believed to be a new and very important feature of the present work ; and yet the Author has endeavored not to introduce the Latin in such a way as seriously to injure the book for those not familiar with that language.

The materials of this book have been mostly taken from Mätzner's "Französische Grammatik." Some assistance has also been derived, especially in the examples and Exercises, from Bescherelle's "Grammaire Nationale." Very little use has been made of the ordinary "instruction-books," which have done so much to obscure the beautiful and philosophical structure of the French language, and to make its acquisition a mere memorizing of phrases and tangled, unexplained idioms.

The Author feels himself under great obligations to Professor W. D. Whitney and Professor E. B. Coe, of Yale College, who examined the manuscript at an early stage of its progress, and whose kind encouragement has helped to sustain him in his long labors, and whose numerous suggestions and corrections have been gladly received and carefully adopted.

One phrase of frequent occurrence in connection with the subject of elision, seems to require notice. "Before a vowel sound" has been used in place of the more usual but hardly more correct, "before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute." Of course the so-called *h* aspirate forms an exception to all such rules, but an exception which cannot be accurately described in a word; and the "aspirated" *h* is really quite as "mute" as the unaspirated.

E. JANES.

JUNE 1, 1877.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



PRELIMINARY CHAPTER.

KEY TO THE PRONUNCIATION.

1. Vowel Sounds.

- a,—Generally like 'a' in 'abbey,' 'lamb,' but often like 'a,' in 'ah,' 'far.'
- â,—Always like 'a' in 'abbey.'
- â,—Always like 'a' in 'far,' 'father.'
- é,—Always like 'a' in 'fate,' 'name.'
- è,—Varying from the sound of 'e' in 'there' to that of 'e' in 'ebb.'
- ê,—Same as è, but always long.
- e,—Generally like 'u' in 'but;' often the same as è, especially in monosyllables; often same as é, especially in terminations.
- i,—Always like 'i' in 'machine,' either long or short.
- î,—Same sound as i, but always long.
- o,—Generally like 'o' in 'rob,' often like 'o' in 'rose.'
- ô,—Always long, like 'o' in 'rose.'
- u,—French 'u,' a sound unknown in English.
- û,—Same sound, but always long.
- y,—Always same as i, but between two vowels equal to two i's.
- ei,—Generally same as é, often same as è.
- ai,—At the end of words the same sound as é, elsewhere the same as è.
- âi,—Same sound as ai, but always long.
- au, eau,—Always like 'o' in 'note.'
- eu, oeu,—French 'eu,' a sound unknown in English, but nearly like 'u' in 'fur.'

Note.—In the parts of **avoir**, 'to have,' **eu** has the sound of French 'u.'

ou,—Always like ‘oo’ in ‘moon.’

oi,—Always like ‘wa’ in ‘was,’ ‘what.’

ua, ue, ui, uo,—Nearly always preceded by **g** or **q**, in which case the **u** is generally silent, and the sound is like **kâ, ké, ki, kô, gâ, ghé, ghi, gô**. When the **u** is sounded it is like English ‘w,’ as in ‘was,’ ‘waste,’ ‘weep,’ ‘watch.’

2. Nasal Sounds.

im	}	All alike, the “first nasal sound;” like ‘a’ in ‘fan,’ nasalized. A sound not heard separately in English, but joined with a following consonant, in such words as ‘anger.’
in		
ym		
aim		
ain		
ein	}	All alike, the “second nasal sound;” like ‘a’ in ‘watch,’ ‘what,’ nasalized. Sometimes heard in ‘Concord.’
(i)en		

am	}	All alike, the “second nasal sound;” like ‘a’ in ‘watch,’ ‘what,’ nasalized. Sometimes heard in ‘Concord.’
an		
em	}	Both alike, the “third nasal sound;” like ‘a’ in ‘war,’ nasalized.
en		

om	}	Both alike, the “third nasal sound;” like ‘a’ in ‘war,’ nasalized.
on		

um	}	All alike, the “fourth nasal sound;” like French ‘eu,’ nasalized.
un		
eun		

3. Consonant Sounds.

Consonants are pronounced, for the most part, the same in French as in English (except **m** and **n** nasal, as above).

At the end of words, however, consonants are generally silent.

The following need special notice here :

ch,—Always like ‘sh’ in ‘shun.’

h,—Always silent; except in some names.

j,—Always like ‘z’ in ‘azure.’

g,—Before **i** or **e**, like French **j**.

(i)lle,—At the end of words, and often in the middle, ll preceded by i has a “liquid sound,” unknown in English, but similar to ‘yu’ in ‘young.’

il,—l final has often the “liquid sound,” like ll, when preceded by i.

gn,—Always liquid, like ‘ni’ in ‘union.’

s,—Between two vowels almost always like z; otherwise generally like ‘s’ in ‘sin.’

x,—Generally like ‘gs,’ but following nearly the same rules as in English.

Foreign words and names are, for the most part, pronounced as much as possible like French words.

Many words, however, especially from the Latin and Greek, not having become well domiciled in French, are pronounced more or less as in the languages from which they are taken.

Special rules and exceptions will be found in the next chapter, on “Pronunciation.”



CHAPTER I.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

4. Letters.—French is written with the same letters as English, but **W** and **K** are found only in foreign words.

5. Capitals.—Capital letters are used as in English, with the following exceptions :

They are not used—

1. In titles of persons, as—

L'amiral Nelson, Admiral Nelson.

Le général Knox, General Knox.

2. In adjectives derived from proper names, as—

français, French.

chrétien, Christian.

3. In the names of the days, the seasons, and the points of the compass, as—

Le printemps, Spring.

Le sud, the South.

Le lundi, Monday.

L'été, Summer.

Note.—The names of the months are begun with capitals, as—

Mai, May.

Juin, June.

4. In the personal pronoun **je**, 'I,' and the interjection **o**, 'O,' as—

Il dit, o, je suis, etc., He said, O, I am, etc.

6. Accent.—There is no accent in French, in the English sense of the term. The last syllable of a word or phrase generally receives, in the best usage, a slight stress of voice. Otherwise each syllable is spoken as nearly as possible with the same force.

7. Accents.—There are three diacritical marks called “accents,” the acute (´), the grave (`), and the circumflex (^).

Their use is as follows :

8. Acute Accent.—This is used only over the vowel *e*, and always gives it the “close sound,” like ‘*a*’ in ‘*fate*.’

It is used in the following cases :

1. At the end of a word it denotes that *e* is not silent. In this case it remains unchanged when *e* mute, or *s*, or both are added in inflection ; as—

aimé, aimée, aimés, aimées, loved.

2. It sometimes serves to distinguish between two meanings of the same word, as—

reformer, to form again ; *réformer*, to reform.

3. Sometimes its use is arbitrary, as—

réception (from *recevoir*) ; *irréligion* (from *religion*).

4. A few words may be written with either the acute or the grave accent, as—

collége or *collège* ; *cortége* or *cortège*.

9. Grave Accent.—This is used chiefly over *e*, to which it gives the “open sound,” varying from ‘*e*’ in ‘*there*’ to ‘*e*’ in ‘*ebb*.’ It occurs also over *a* and *u*. It is used—

1. Chiefly over *e* standing before a so-called “feminine syllable” (one containing *e* mute, either final or followed by silent letters only), and often over *e* standing before a final *s*, as—

père, très, première, mènerai, succès.

2. To distinguish between words otherwise spelled alike, as—

a, has,	-	-	-	-	à, to.
là, the,	-	-	-	-	là, there.
des, of the,	-	-	-	-	dès, since.
ou, or,	-	-	-	-	où, where.

Note.—In *déjà*, from Latin ‘jam,’ it seems to mark the falling off of the ‘m.’

10. Circumflex Accent.—This is used over all the vowels, and always denotes a long sound. It is used—

1. To distinguish between words otherwise spelled alike, as—

du, of the,	-	-	-	dû, due, owed.
cru, raw,	-	-	-	crû, grown.
mur, wall,	-	-	-	mûr, ripe.
sur, upon,	-	-	-	sûr, sure.
matin, morning,	-	-	-	mâtin, mastiff.
pêcheur, sinner,	-	-	-	pêcheur, fisherman.
finit (Pres. Indicative),	-	-	-	finît (Impf. Subjunc.).
reçut (ΠΡΕΤΕΡΕ ΠΡΟΣΕΤΕ),	-	-	-	reçût (“ “).
vendit (Preterite Indic.),	-	-	-	vendit (“ “).

2. It generally shows that contraction has taken place, as—

être	} Formerly spelled	} estre, to be.		
île			} isle, island.	
pâte				} paste, paste.
forêt				
chantâmes	} From Latin	} cantavimus.		
chantâtes			} cantavistis.	
dormîtes				} dormistis.
âme				

11. The Hyphen is used as in English. But in addition it is also used—

1. In the interrogative and imperative forms of the verb, when the subject or object immediately follows, as—

Suis-je ? Am I ?

Donnez-le-lui. Give it him.

Aimé-je ? Do I love ?

2. In most compound words and some phrases, as—

tête-à-tête (head to head), private interview.

moi-même, myself.

très-bien, very well (and the like).

là-haut, up there.

ci-après, hereafter.

3. Between the parts of the numerals from 17 to 90.
See Sec. 99.

12. The **Apostrophe** is used to denote elision, as—

s'il = si il.

jusqu'à = jusque à.

c'est = ce est.

s'entr'aider = se entre aider.

entr'acte = entre acte.

presqu'île = presque île.

Note.—In grand'mère, grand'chambre, etc., the apostrophe is not a mark of elision, but a remnant of the Old French undeclined adjective.

13. The **Diæresis** is used as in English, except in the ending -guë, where it merely shows that the u has its full sound, the ë remaining silent.

14. The **Cedilla** (from the Greek zeta) is a mark placed under c, to show that it has a sharp sound, like s, as—

garçon, boy; reçus, received.

15. **Other Marks of punctuation** are used as in English; but in novels quotation marks are used much less than in English; the dash is also used very often at the beginning of paragraphs.

SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

16. **A** has two sounds—

1. Generally like English 'a' in 'abbey,' 'lamb,' not quite so "flat" as 'a' in 'hat,' as—

la, glace, ami, patte, mal, arabique.

2. Often like English 'a' in 'ah,' 'father,' as—

mâle, vase, cas, pâte, aimâmes.

Note.—A is silent in taon, Saône, août, aoûté, aoûté, and aoriste.

17. Three Sounds of E.—E has three sounds, the "close" (e fermé), the "open" (e ouvert), and the so-called "e mute" (e muet).

18. "E fermé."—The close sound of e is like English 'a' in 'fate,' 'name.' It is heard in the following cases :

1. Always when e is marked with the acute accent, as—

été, donné-je, fée, né, aimés, thé.

2. In the word et, and before final d, r, or z, silent, as—

et, assez, pied, tuer, clocher, chez.

19. "E ouvert."—The open sound of e varies from the sound of English 'e' in 'there,' to that of 'e' in 'ebb.' It is heard in the following cases :

1. Full and long in e with the grave or circumflex accent ; in the ending -ier when r is not silent ; and before -rr when it is the final sound of a word, as—

accès, dès, mère, être, évêque, carême, hier, tiers, verre, terre, serrent (serr).

2. Shorter and less open in monosyllables ending in silent s ; before a final consonant sound (except in the ending -ier, as above) ; and before any double consonant followed by e mute (excepting -rre final, as above, but including rr when not a final sound), as—

mes, tes, des, ces, les, tu es, il est, cher, bref, ciel, sers, perds, belle, quelque, cessent (cess), pelleterie, netteté, cesserai, ferrer, terrible, derrière, perroquet.

20. "E muet."—E mute, so-called, has generally an obscure sound, like English 'e' in 'hatter,' nearly like 'u' in 'but.'

It is heard in the following cases :

1. In monosyllables ending in e, as—

me, te, se, le, que (kǔ), ce, de.

2. Often at the end of a syllable which is not final, as—
regret, demain, besoin, brebis, créerai, jouerez, nettoierai, prierai.

3. E final, without any mark of accent, is silent (e mute proper), except in reading poetry, as—

belle, encore, chasse, envie, statue.

Exception.—In reading poetry e final without mark has the sound of e mute so-called, when the next word begins with a consonant ; also it is often lightly sounded or whispered after some difficult combinations of consonants, as—

table, sabre, merle, lorsque (lorsk ŭ).

4. E is silent between g and a or o, merely serving to show that g is soft, as—

mangeant (man' jan', nasal sound), orgeat, pigeon.

5. E final in monosyllables is elided before a vowel sound, as—

l'ami (le ami), c'est (ce est), j'aime (je aime).

Note.—E has the sound of short a in the words femme, indemniser, indemnité, solennel, and always in the adverbial ending -emment.

21. I.—The two sounds of I differ only in length. They are—

1. Long I is like English 'i' in 'machine,' as—

vie, rire, finir, épître, île, si.

2. Short **I** is the same in quality, as—
ici, imiter, éviter, il.

Note.—**I** is silent in *poignée, poignet, oignon, and encoignure.*

22. **O** has three sounds, viz. :

1. Generally like English 'o' in 'rob,' as—
soc, orge, carotte, fol, revolte, poli.

2. Often like English 'o' in 'rose,' as—
dôme, pose, trône, motion, dos, gros.

3. Before a final **r** sound, a still more sonorous sound, like 'o' in 'corpse,' as—

or, cor, encore, hors, honorent, dors.

Note.—**O** is silent in *faon, Laon, and paon.*

23. **U**.—The sound of French **u** is unknown in English. If the lips be placed as in whistling, and an attempt then be made to give the sound of English 'e,' French **u** will generally be produced. But this sound must be learned from the teacher. **U** may be either long or short—

1. **U** long has generally the circumflex accent, as—
brûler, fûmes, grue, figure, vue.

2. **U** short is of the same quality, as—
férule, minute, ruse, plume.

Exception 1.—In Latin words, before **m**, **u** is sounded as in English in the same words, as—

album, forum, triumvir, dictum.

Exception 2.—In *Mameluk*, and a few other foreign words, **u** is like *ou* (English 'oo' in 'moon').

Note.—**U** after **g** or **q** is generally silent. After **g** it merely serves to show that the **g** is hard, as in 'gun,' as—

que (kû), question, qui (kee), quatre.
guide (gheed), guerre (ghèr), fatigue.



Exception.—U is not silent after g in *arguer, aiguille, aiguiser*, and derivatives, and when followed by *ë*, as in *aiguë, ciguë* (*ë* silent). See Sec. 13.

24. Y, when a vowel, sounds like *i*; but between two vowels it has the sound of two *i*'s as—

essayer (essai-ier), pays (pai-i), royal (roi-ial).

COMPOUND VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

25. AI has all the different sounds of *e*, viz.:

1. Like *é*, at the end of a word, and often in other positions, as—

ai, finirai, aimer, gai, Mai, essai, gaité, arraignée, naîtraî.

2. Like *è* long, when marked with the circumflex, for the most part, and before a “feminine syllable,” as—

aide, chaise, maire, plaît, fraîche, maigre, aîné, haine, plaie, éclairs.

3. Like *è* short in the ending *-aison*, and usually in the endings *-ais* and *-ait*, as—

maison, raison, liaison, mais, avais, était.

4. Like *e* mute in the parts (not the terminations) of the verb *faire*, ‘to do,’ and its derivatives, as—

faisons (fuzon’), faiseur, infaisable.

Note.—This pronunciation is colloquial. In orations and plays *ai* is in these words sounded like *é*.

Remark.—Before *l* or *ll*, *a* and *i* do not coalesce; *a* is short and the sound of *i* is obscure, as—

muraille, serail, bataille, détail.

26. EI has generally the same sound as *é*, but often is like *è*, as—

(*é*), *treizième, neiger, seigneur*
(*è*), *reine, teigne, treize, neige.*

27. **AU** and **EAU**, both alike, have the sound of English 'o' in 'note,' as—

haut (ô), eaux (ô), beau, jaune.

28. **EU** and **ŒU**, both alike, have a sound unknown in English, but similar to 'u' in 'fur,' as—

(long) jeûne, peur, cœur, fauteuil.

(short) jeune, feu, œuf, orgueil, lieu.

Exception.—In the parts of the verb *avoir*, 'to have,' and in words from the Greek, *eu* is like French *u*, as—

eu, eus, eusse, eut, Eugénie, euphonie.

29. **UE** and **Œ** before *il* and *ille* have the same sound as **EU** and **ŒU**, as—

œil, accueil, ceillade.

Exception.—In *orgueilleux*, *ue* is like *è*.

30. **OU** is like English 'oo' in 'moon,' and may be either long or short, as—

(long), goût, dégoût, voûte, roue, pouls.

(short), pou, coup, fenouil, bouilli, oui.

31. **OI** is like English 'wa' in 'was' (not in want), as—

roi, moi, poire, noir, boire, foi.

32. **UA, UE, UI, UO**, nearly always occur (except *ui*) after *g* or *q*, in which cases the *u* is silent, merely serving after *g* to denote the hard sound of *g*, and after *q* to show derivation from the Latin. Thus, in French words, *gua, gue, gui, qua, que, qui, quo*, are pronounced *ga, ghé, ghi, ka, ké, ki, ko*, as—

guère, guerre, guide, guise, gueule.

qui, quart, quatre, question, queue, quoi, quotient, disquisition.

Exceptions.—In foreign words and in Latin words not well assimilated to the French, *ua, ue, ui, uo* are pronounced as diphthongs; also *ui* in many truly French words; as follows:

1. **UA** like English 'wa' in 'waft,' 'wax,' as—

Alguazil, Guatemale, lingual, loquacité, quadrupède, and many beginning with quadra-, quadri-, quatri-, quater-, and quinqu-

2. **UE** with the full sound of French *u* and the short sound of *e*, combined, as—

questeur, loquèle, équestre, quérémonie.

3. **UI** with French *u*, somewhat shortened, and the short sound of *i*; nearly approaching the English 'wee.' This sound occurs also in many words truly French.

Examples.—*Linguiste, équitation, aiguille, aiguiser, quiet, cuir, fuir, celui, ruine, nuire, fuite, puisque.*

4. **UO**, like English 'wa' in 'wan,' 'watch,' as—

aquosité.

NASAL SOUNDS.

33. M and N, at the end of syllables, lose their value as consonants, and only add a nasal sound to the preceding vowel, which, however, is greatly modified by this nasalization. All the nasal sounds may be reduced to four, which are exhibited in the table below.

For Exceptions see the next Sections.

34. Table of Nasal Sounds.

FIRST NASAL SOUND.

<i>in,</i>	as in— <i>pin, crin, vin, vînmes, fin, soin,</i>	} Sound of French short a nasalized. Similar to English 'an' in 'anger,' but with no sound of 'g.'
	<i>foin.</i>	
<i>im,</i>	as in— <i>impie, simple, importe.</i>	
<i>aim,</i>	as in— <i>faim, daim.</i>	
<i>ain,</i>	as in— <i>sain, crainte, ainsi, Américain.</i>	
<i>ein,</i>	as in— <i>sein, plein, feint, peindre.</i>	
<i>(i) en,</i>	as in— <i>bien, chien, Chrétien.</i>	
<i>ym,</i>	as in— <i>nympe, Olympe, symphonie.</i>	
<i>yn,</i>	as in— <i>lynx, syntax.</i>	

SECOND NASAL SOUND.

an, as in—dans, manger, instance, brigand.	} Sound of English 'a' in 'watch,' nasalized.
am, as in—camp, lampe, amnistie, Priam.	
em, as in—empire, ensemble, emmener.	
en, as in—ennui, gens, encre, Orient, client, audience, science, argent.	
	} Similar to 'on' in 'Concord,' but with no sound of 'g.'

THIRD NASAL SOUND.

on, as in—bonbon, long, conte, rencontre.	} Sound of English 'a' in 'war,' nasalized.
om, as in—nom, compte, plomb, colomb.	

FOURTH NASAL SOUND.

un, as in—brun, lundi, chacun.	} French en nasalized.
um, as in—parfum, humble.	
eun, as in—jeun, Meun.	

Note.—The diphthong *oi*, when nasalized, is like English 'wa' in 'wax,' nasalized, as—

loin, moins, foin, soin, poindre.

35. Exceptions.

1. **M** or **n** just before an **m** or **n** does not usually have the nasal sound, as—

annal, annexe, innominé, tonnerre, mammifère, omnibus, gemme, dilemme, imminent, innocent, ennemi.

Note.—**Emm-** at the beginning of a word always has the nasal sound, as—

emmener, emmêler, emmaigrir, including remmener, remmancher, etc.

Also, **enn-** has the nasal sound in *ennui, ennoblir*, and their derivatives.

2. Apparent exceptions arise from the division of syllables (see Sec. 60), as—

inouï (i-nou-i), inhumain (i-nu-min').

éminent (é-mi-nan'), énerver (é-ner-vé).

imiter (i-mi-té), inactif (i-nac-tif), inhabile (i-na-bil).

Note.—In *enivrer* and derivatives, and also in *enorgueillir*, the nasal sound is heard, and also the ordinary sound of **n**, *enivrer (en-ni-vré).*

3. **En**, preceded by **i**, takes the first nasal sound instead of the second in the parts of the verbs **venir** and **tenir**,

and their compounds ; in monosyllables ending in **ien** and their compounds ; and in some proper names, as—

viens, tiendrai, parvient, retiendrez.
chien, chiendent, lien, rien, bien, bientôt.
Galien, Athénien, Chrétien, Adrien.

In **Enghien**, **-ien** has the sound of **in** (**En-ghin**).

Note.—**En** (not with **i**) has the first nasal sound in some foreign words and names, as—

Benjamin, Mentor, Marengo, appendice, agenda, sempiternel.

4. **M** and **n** do not give the nasal sound in unassimilated foreign words, as—

hymen, spécimen, abdomen, amen.
item, Sem, Jerusalem, omnibus.

In **somnambule**, **am** is nasal, **om** not.

Note.—The nasal sound is heard, however, in **Adam, dam, quidam** (**ki-dan'**).

5. **Ent** final, in the third person plural of verbs, is not nasal, but entirely silent, as—

content (**con't**), one syllable.

CONSONANTS.

36. General Rule.—Consonants not final are pronounced, in general, as in English, but are all sounded, none being silent, except at the end of a word. (See next Sec.) Examples :

psaume, flegme, calme, (**p, g, l**, not silent).

37. Final Consonants are generally silent, except **c, f, l**, and **r**, as—

était (**ètè**), **faits** (**fè**), **dards** (**dar**).

38. General Exceptions.—In many foreign words and names, final consonants are not silent ; also in some technical terms. Examples :

B,—**rumb** (**rom'b**), **radoub**, **Job**.

D,—**David**, **Alfred**, **éphod**.

G,—**joug**, **zigzag**, **whig**, **bourg** (**bourk**).

S,—**Atlas**, **Adonis**, **forceps**, **biceps**, **blocus**, **atlas**, **omnibus**, **gratis**.

T,—**Albret**, **Lot**, **Huet**, **deficit**, **vivat**, **exeat**, **deficit**, **Christ**, **Brest**, **Soult**.

X,—**Ajax**, **Aix**.

Special rules and exceptions will be found below, under each letter which requires particular notice.

39. Two sounds of C.—C has two sounds, as in English, viz :

1. C is soft, like **s**, before **e**, **i**, and **y**, and also when written with the cedilla, as—

douce, garçon, ceci, Nancy, cité.

2. C is hard, like **k**, in all other cases, as—

clerc, coco, cuir, cri, lac, succès.

Note.—C has the sound of **g** hard in *second* (*segon'*) and *fécond*, and their derivatives, and in *czar* (*gsar*).

3. C final, generally sounded (Sec. 37), is silent in words ending in *-anc* :—

banc, blanc, flanc, franc;—also in verbal endings;—*vainc, convainc, etc.*, including *vaincs, convaincs, etc.*; also in *broc, clerc, croc, accroc, raccroc, escroc, estomac, marc, jonc, ajonc, tronc, porc, caoutchouc, tabac*.

Note.—C is also silent in *échecs* (not in *échec*), *amict*, *instinct* (*in-stin'*).

40. CH has the sound of English 'sh' in 'shall,' as—

chercher, chaise, Achille, archevêque.

Note.—In some Greek words and some proper nouns it is hard, like **k**, as—

chaos, chœur, Chrétien, Michel-Ange.

41. D Final.—D is silent before final **s**, as—

fonds (fon'), remords (remor), vend's (ven').

Note.—D is not silent in *sud* and its compounds. See also Sec. 38.

42. F Final, pronounced by the general rule, is silent in *clef, chef-d'œuvre, bœufs, œufs, cerfs*, and *nerf*,—but is not silent in *chef*, not compounded, nor in *bœuf, cerf, œuf*, in the singular, nor in *nerf*, before a vowel sound.

Note.—In *neuf*, **f** takes the sound of **v** before a vowel sound, as—*neuf ans (neu-van')*, *neuf hommes (neu-vom)*.

43. Two Sounds of G.—G has two sounds, as in English :

1. G is soft, like 'g' in 'gibbet,' before **e**, **i**, and **y**, as—*genre, gibet, général, gymnastique.*

2. **G** is hard, like 'g' in 'game,' in all other cases (except before **n**, see below), as—

garçon, gomme, guide, gloire, gramme.

3. **G** is silent, generally at the end of a word (see Sec. 38), and also in **doigt** (doi), **vingt** (vin'), and its derivatives, in the compounds of **sang**, ~~sanglot (san'glô)~~, etc., in **legs**, (lè), and its compounds, in **signet** (si-nè), **Regnard** (Ré-nar), **Clugny**, **Compiègne**.

44. **Gn** has a "liquid sound," like English 'ni' in 'union,' the proper sound of **g** being entirely lost, as—

magnifique, signer (si-nyé), agneau.

Note.—In some unassimilated words from the Latin and Greek **g** and **n** are heard separately, as—

gnome, gnostique, agnat, diagnostique, géognosie, ignition, inexpugnable, magnificat, physiognomie, récongnitif, stagnant, stagnation.

45. **H** is silent in French, except in some proper names.

H Aspirate, so-called.—About 300 words, beginning with **h**, do not allow the elision of a preceding vowel, or the linking of a preceding consonant. This is called "aspirate **h**."

The following list contains all those in common use. Those not given are nautical and technical terms.

List of "Aspirated" Words.

habler,	halo,	hareng,
hache,	halte,	hargneux,
hagard,	hampe,	haricot,
haie,	hanche,	harnacher,
haillon,	hanneton,	harnais,
haine,	hanter,	harnois,
haïr, &c.,	happer,	harpie,
hâle,	harangue,	hasard, &c.,
halener,	harasser,	hâte, &c.,
hâler,	harceler,	hausser,
haleter,	hardes,	haut, &c.,
halle	hardi, &c.,	hâve,
hallucination,	harem,	Havre,

havre,	hoche, &c.,	houille, &c.,
havre-sac,	hogner,	houppe, &c.,
hennir, &c.,	Hollande,	hourî,
Henri,	Hongrie,	housser, &c.,
héraut,	honnir,	houx,
hérissier,	honte,	huaille,
hernie,	hoquet,	huit, &c.,
héron,	horde,	Huguenot,
héros,	hors,	huppe, &c.,
(NOT derivatives),	hotte,	hurler, &c.
heurter, &c.,	houblon,	hussard,
hideux,	houe, &c.,	hutte.

In the above list, ' &c.' means, 'and its derivatives or compounds.'

46. **J** has always the sound of 's' in 'pleasure,' as—

jambe, joujou, déjà, rejeter.

47. **L** (except "liquid l") has the same sound as in English, as—

il, illustre, lettre, calcul, intelligent.

Liquid L, so-called.—L and ll, preceded by i, not at the beginning of a word, have usually a "liquid sound," like English 'lli' in 'brilliant,' or even with no sound of l whatever.

1. **ll** liquid hardly differs from English 'y' consonant, as—

travail, œil, deuil, avril, fenil, mil (= millet), péril, trîl, grésil.

2. **lll** liquid is sounded more strongly than il. It occurs for the most part, followed by e mute, at the end of words, in which case a slight sound of the e mute is given, as—

fille (almost like 'feeyu'), chenille, volaille (see Sec. 25, Rem.), muraille.

3. **ll** final is not liquid in the following words, mostly Latin :

List of Words with 'il' not Liquid.

béril,	civil,	il,
bissextîl,	exil,	mil (=1000),
Brésîl,	fil,	morfil,

Nil,	poil,	sextil,
octil,	profil,	subtil,
pénil,	puénil,	viril,
pistil,	quintil (Sec. 32),	volatil.

4. **Ill** is not liquid in the following words, mostly directly from the Latin :

List of Words with 'ill' not Liquid.

Achille,	idylle,	scintiller,
axilliaire,	imbecillité	sille,
and all adjectives in	instiller,	sybille,
-illaire,	Lille,	tittiller,
calville,	mille,	tranquille,
cavillation,	osciller,	(and derivatives),
codicille,	papille,	vaciller,
distiller,	pupille,	vaudeville,
fibrille,	pusillanime,	village,
Gille,	scille,	ville.

5. **L** final is silent in the following :

baril,	fournil,	nombril,
chartil,	frasil,	outil,
chenil,	fusil,	penil,
courtil,	ménil,	sourcil.
coutil,		

Also in *cul-de-sac*, *cul-de-jatte*, though not in *cul*; and in a few proper names.

Note.—**L** is often silent before other final consonants, as—

fil, **pouls**, **aulx**, **Arnauld**.

48. **M** is silent in *damner*, and its derivatives, *damné*, *condamner*, &c.

For **m** nasal, see Sec. 34.

Otherwise **m** is sounded as in English.

49. **N** is silent in *monsieur*. Otherwise **n** and **nn** are as in English.

For **n** nasal, see Sec. 34.

50. **P** is silent in *sept*, *septième* (not in other derivatives of *sept*, as *septembre*, *septennal*), *exempt* (but not in *exemption*), *prompt* (but not *impromptu*); *baptême*, *compte*,

dompter, and their derivatives ; romps, rompt, temps, and corps.

Also final **p** is silent in *drap, galop, trop, sirop, coup, beaucoup, cantaloup, camp, champ, clamp.*

Otherwise **p** sounds as in English.

Note.—**Ph** is always like **f**.

51. Q has the sound of **k**. **Q** final, silent by the general rule, is heard in *coq*, but not in *coqs* nor in *coq-d'Inde*. In *cing* it is heard only before a vowel sound, as—

cing hommes (sin' kom).

52. R is generally pronounced, in French, as a dental consonant. The so-called *grasséyement* is a sound of **r** produced with the base of the tongue, and is heard chiefly in Paris.

R final is silent in the ending *er*, and in *monsieur, messieurs*, as—

parler, panier, narrer, Royer.

Exceptions.—**R** final is not silent in monosyllables (as *fer, cher, mer*), nor in *amer, enfer, hiver*, nor in *hier* when standing alone. In *avant hier* **r** is silent (*avan'-tié*).

53. Two sounds of S.—**S** has two sounds, as in English, viz. :

1. **S** has a soft sound, like **z**, when it stands between two vowels, as—

rose, vase, saisie, présomption, oiseau.

Exception.—In compound words **s** retains the same sound as in the component parts, even though brought between two vowels, as—

havresac (*sac*, not *zac*), *vraisemblable, antisocial, désuétude, présupposer, monosyllable, entresol, asymétrie.*

2. **S** has a sharp sound, like 's' in 'sun,' in all other cases, as—

sœur, sept, fils, substance, transir, isthme, asthme, scribe, squelette, siècle, mais, issue, science, scène, héroïsme, prisme.

Note.—**Sch** is like **sh** in *schisme, schiste*, and their derivatives, and like **sk** in *schène*.

3. **S** final, silent by the general rule, is heard in Greek and Latin words (see Sec. 38), and in **fil**s (at the end of a sentence or before a vowel sound), **jadis**, **lis** (but not in **fleur-de-lis**), **mœurs**, **ours**, **relaps**, and in **tous** when used absolutely.

4. **S** is silent, when not final, in some names and words, chiefly compounds:—**Descartes**, **lesquels**, **mesdames**, **registre**, **jurisdiction**, etc.

54. **T** has generally the same sound as in English, but—

1. **T** has the sharp sound of **s** in the endings **-tial**, **-tiel**, **-tien**, **-tier**, **-tiare**, **-tion**, **-tius**, **-tium**, **-atie**, **-étie**, **-itie**, **-otie**, **-utie**, **-eptie**, and **-ertie**,—and also in the combinations **-tia-**, **-tié-**, **-tio-** when not final, as—

nation, **partial**, **essentiel**, **initier**, **Titien**, **ambitieux**, **Actium**, **Aetius**, **pénitentiare**, **aristocratie**, **minutie**, **ineptie**, **inertie**, **satiété**, **Spartiate**, **nicotiane**, **gentiane**, **Miltiade**, **pétiole**, **ratiociner**.

Exceptions.—**T** retains its own sound in the following, mostly unassimilated Latin words :

bastion, **bestial**, **mixture**, **Critias**, **centiare**, **moitié**, **métier**.

2. **T** final, silent by the general rule, is heard in many proper names and Latin words (see Sec. 38), and in the following :

brut, **chut**, **dot**, **huit** (before a vowel sound), **lut**, **net**, **rit**, **rut**, **pré-terit**.

3. When **t** final is preceded by another consonant, both are usually silent, as—

instinct, **est** (=is).

Exception.—Both are sounded in the following, mostly foreign .

abject ,	inexact ,	strict ,
compact ,	incorrect ,	tact ,
contact ,	intact ,	test ,
est (=East),	lest ,	zist ,
exact ,	ouest ,	zest .
hast ,	rapt ,	

Note.—In **Christ** both **s** and **t** are heard ; in **Jesus Christ**, neither (**Jezu-Cri**) ; so also **Antéchrist** (**Antécéri**).

Sept (**sett**), is pronounced **sé** before a consonant sound, if closely joined to the following word.

4. **Th** has always the simple sound of **t**.

55. X.—The double consonant **x** has in general the same sound as in English, following the same rules.

1. **X** is like **ks** before another consonant ; at the beginning of words (except proper names) ; when not silent at the end of a word ; and usually between two vowels, as—

exclamation, sextuple, xiste, luxe, Ajax, préfix, sphinx.

Exceptions.—**X** final, usually silent, is sometimes like **s** and sometimes like **z**. See 5, below.

2. **X** is like **gs** at the beginning of Greek names ; and in the prefixes **ex** and **hex** before a vowel sound, as—

Xénophon, Xercès, exact, hexamètre, exhorter.

Exception.—**X** is like **ks** in **exécrer** (as being derived from the Latin 'ex-secrari').

3. **X** is like sharp **s** in **soixante** and its compounds, and in **Auxerre, Auxonne, Aix-la-Chapelle, Bruxelles, coccyx**, and in **dix** and **six** at the end of a sentence.

4. **X** is like **z** in the derivatives of **deux, six, and dix**, and when final **x** is carried (see 5), as—

deuxième, sixième, dixaine, dixeau.

5. **X** final is usually silent, as—

six, dix, paix, chaud, vieux, voix, époux, Bayeux.

Note.—**X** final is like **s** in **dix** and **six**, at the end of a sentence ; and like **z** when carried to the next word, before a vowel sound (see Sec. 58), as—

Béatrix est (**Beatri-zé**), **dix-huit** (**di-zui**), **deux hommes**, (**deu-zom**).

56. Y is usually a vowel, equal to **i** or **ii**, and by some is always so explained. If considered as a consonant, it has the same sound as English **y**, as—

bruyère, Lafayette, Bayard, Mayence.

57. Z final, silent by the general rule, is pronounced like English *z* in *gaz*; and like *s* in *quartz*, *Metz*, *Luz*, *Alvarez*, *Cortez*, and other foreign proper names.

LINKING OF WORDS.

58. Frequently, when a word ends in a consonant, and the next word begins with a vowel sound, the consonant is carried over to the second word, and the two are spoken as one. This linking does not take place if the words are separated by a mark of punctuation or a rhetorical pause. It is most frequent with *s*, *x*, and *t*, and generally modifies the sound of the consonant.

Examples.—*Vous avez* (vou-zavè), *ils ont* (il-zon'), *aux armes* (o-zarm).

1. In such cases *s* and *x* take the sound of *z*, *g* that of *k*, and *d* that of *t*, even though silent by other rules.

Examples.—*Beatrix est* (Beatri-zè), *profond abîme* (profon' tabîm), *grand homme* (gran'-tom), *neuf enfants* (neu ven'fan'), *sang humain* (san'-kumain'), *depuis un* (depui-zun').

2. When the consonant to be linked is *n* nasal, it generally has a double sound, the first nasal, the second not so, as—

bon époux (bon'-népou), *bien heureux* (bien'-neureu), *plein air* (plèn'-nèr), *un enfant bien élevé* (un'-nen'fan' bien'-nélevé).

3. *E* mute final is often disregarded, and the words linked as above, as—

être attentif (ê-tratten'tif), *genre humain* (gen'-rumin').

4. A few words are never linked—

et, clef, loup, plomb, riz.

59. Elision of *e* mute final is practised very commonly, for brevity and euphony.

Examples.—*Voilà le chemin de fer*, see the railroad (pronounced *Voilà chmin'd fer*).

Je le sais, I know it (jul sè).

Je ne te le donne pas, I do not give it to you (pronounced *Jün tül don pâ*).

C'est le chemin de fer de la ville, it is the railroad from the city (pronounced *cél chmin'd fer dlavil*).

Note.—For the elision of *e* mute before *est*, *à*, *eux*, &c., see Sec. 12, on the use of the apostrophe.

60. Syllables.—In dividing words into syllables, each syllable, so far as possible, is made to end with a vowel.

Examples.—**Patrimoine**, *pa-tri-moi-ne*, divided into five syllables, pronounced as four.

mé-tho-de.	ma-gni-fi-que.
i-gno-rant.	as-si-gna-tion.
in-co-gni-to.	é-ty-mo-lo-gie.
ca-rac-té-ris-ti-que.	ma-lheur.
bie-nheu-reux.	a-veu-gle.

CHAPTER II.—THE ARTICLE.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

61. The Definite Article, in reality a weakened demonstrative pronoun, from the Latin 'ille,' has two genders, masculine and feminine, and two numbers, singular and plural. It agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it belongs. Its form is, in the singular, masculine *le*, feminine *la*; in the plural *les* for both genders. Examples :

Le père , the father.	Les livres , the books.
La mère , the mother.	La mort , death.
Les enfants , the children.	

Note.—Before a vowel sound both *le* and *la* suffer elision, taking the form *l'*, as—

L'homme , the man.	L'histoire , the history.
L'arbre , the tree.	L'année , the year.

Exception.—*Le* and *la* never lose their vowel before *onze*, eleven, and *onzième*, eleventh.

62. Du and au.—The definite article joins with the prepositions *de* or *à*, forming one word; but *la* and *l'* never thus unite. The following table shows all the forms :

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Alone.	Before a vowel sound.	With de.	With à.
Sing. { Mas....	le	l'	du	au
{ Fem....	la	l'	de la	à la
Plural	les	les	des	aux

EXAMPLES.

Du roi , of the king.	Des frères , of the brothers.
Au voisin , to the neighbor.	Des feuilles , of the leaves.
Au garçon , to the boy.	Au vin , to the wine.
Aux loups , to the wolves.	De l'ennemi , of the enemy.
Aux fenêtres , to the windows.	De l'oiseau , the bird's.
De la vie , of the life.	À l'argent , to the money.
À l'oncle , to the uncle.	À la tante , to the aunt.

63. Use of the Definite Article.—The definite article has in general a slightly demonstrative force, as in English. But its use is far more extensive than in English, as follows :

1. The definite article is used with common nouns used in the full extent of their meaning :

La nature , nature.	La fortune , fortune.
L'amour , love.	L'amitié , friendship.
Le vice , vice.	La jeunesse , youth.
L'hiver , Winter.	Le fer , iron.
L'or , gold.	Les hommes , men.

2. The definite article is used to denote the parts of the body, where the possessive pronoun is used in English :

Mal à la tête , pain in one's head, headache.
L'épée à la main , his sword in his hand.
Mal aux dents , toothache.

3. The definite article is used with other parts of speech, when used as nouns :

Le vert , green (a color).	Le pourquoi , the why.
Le boire et le manger , drinking and eating.	

4. The definite article is used with the names of countries, provinces, mountains, rivers, winds, and titles of persons :

L'Europe , Europe.		De l'Amérique , of America.
Les Alpes , the Alps.		Le Vesuve , Vesuvius.
La Seine , the Seine.		La Lorraine , Lorraine.
Le général Knox , General Knox.		

5. The definite article is used in distributive expressions, where the indefinite article is used in English :

Une fois l'an, once a year.

Deux fois la semaine, twice a week.

Trois milles à l'heure, three miles an hour.

6. The definite article is repeated with each noun to which it belongs :

L'esprit, le cœur et les mœurs, mind, heart, and manners.

7. The definite article is inseparable from some names of places and authors :

La Hague, the Hague.

La Mexique, Mexico.

Le Poussin, Poussin.

| **La Havane**, Havana.

| **Le Dante**, Dante.

64. Exceptions to the above.—The definite article is sometimes omitted, though required by the general rules :

1. The definite article is not used with a noun which limits another noun, though used in its full extent :—

Le roi de France (not **de la France**), the king of France.

Un homme de courage, a man of courage.

L'armée de France, the French army.

2. The definite article is not used with the numerals employed in names of sovereigns and in citations from books :

Henri quatre, Henry (four) the Fourth.

George trois, George (three) the Third.

Livre premier, chapitre cinq, book I, chap. 5.

3. The definite article is not used with the names of countries, when governed by the prepositions **en** or **de** :

Les oiseaux d'Afrique, the birds of Africa.

Il est en Écosse, He is in Scotland.

Je viens d'Irlande, I have come from Ireland.

Note.—The article is arbitrarily retained with some names of places ; see Sec. 63, 7.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

65. The Indefinite Article, in reality a weakened demonstrative, from the Latin ‘*unus*,’ has two genders, masculine and feminine, and agrees in gender with the noun to which it belongs. Its form is, masculine **un**, feminine **une**. Examples :

Un canif, a penknife,
Un ami, a friend.

Une reine, a queen,
Une pomme, an apple.

66. Use of the Indefinite Article.—Its use is less extensive than in English, but, in general, follows the same usage. It is not used, where it might be expected, in the following cases :

1. The indefinite article is not used with nouns in apposition :

L'avare, comédie par **Molière**, “The Miser,” a comedy by Molière.

Vienne, ville d'**Autriche**, Vienna, a city of Austria.

2. The indefinite article is not used in phrases where the verb and its object are so closely joined as to be considered as one word or “phrase” :

Faire fortune, to make a fortune.

Rendre visite, to pay a visit.

Ne dire mot, not to say a word.

3. The indefinite article is not used in distributive expressions ; the definite article or the preposition **par** being used in such cases :

Six francs par jour, 6 francs a day.

Une fois la semaine, once a week.

4. The indefinite article is not used in the titles of books :

Grammaire française, a French grammar.

5. The indefinite article is not used after **quel**, ‘how,’ used as an exclamation, nor usually after **jamais**, ‘never ;’

Quel bruit vous faites, what a noise you make !

Jamais général plus distingué, never a general was more distinguished.

6. The indefinite article is not used with a predicate noun or adjective :

Je suis français, I am a Frenchman.

Il est médecin, he is a physician.

Note.—The indefinite article is used after *c'est*, 'he is,' 'it is,' *voilà*, 'there is,' *voici*, 'here is ;' or when it belongs to a predicate noun which is limited by an adjective, as—

C'est un Anglais, he is an Englishman.

Voici un officier, here is an officer.

Il était un médecin distingué, he was a distinguished physician.

DEFINITE ARTICLE USED PARTITIVELY.

67. So-called "Partitive Article."—The definite article, combined with the preposition *de* (*du*, *de la*, *des*), is used with a partitive meaning, before a common noun not used in its widest sense, and denotes an indefinite limitation of its meaning, like the English 'some' or 'any' :

J'ai du pain, I have some bread.

Du vin et de l'argent, wine and money.

Mon père a du bon et du mauvais, my father has some good and some bad (qualities).

Note.—The article thus used is called by most French grammarians the "Partitive Article."

68. Exceptions.—The article is omitted in partitive expressions, and *de* alone is used in the following cases :

1. The article is not used after a negative or partitive adverb, or any word having a partitive or quantitative force :

Je n'ai pas de café, I have no coffee.

Beaucoup de l'argent, much money.

Une foule de peuple, a crowd of people.

Moins de fer, point d'or, less iron, no gold.

Un panier d'oranges, a basket of oranges.

Une troupe d'enfans (see Sec. 76, N.), a troop of children.

Note.—**Bien**, though really a quantitative adverb in such expressions, takes the article :

Bien des ennemis, plenty of enemies.

Bien de l'argent, a good deal of money.

But the expression, **bien d'autres**, 'many others,' is sometimes met with.

2. The article is not used in partitive expressions with a noun limited by an adjective :

Nous avons de bons livres, We have good books.

De mauvais café, bad coffee.

Voici de bon pain, Here is some good bread.

Exception.—The article is retained when the noun and adjective are closely connected in a phrase or compound word :

Des blancs-becs (white-beaks), green-horns.

Il a du bon sens, he has good sense.

De la belle musique, some good music.

Des jeunes gens, some young folks.

GENERAL EXAMPLES.

Sans argent, without any money.

Sans façon, without ceremony. (Here there is no partitive idea. All is excluded.)

Avec de l'argent, with some money. (Not *all* money, but an indefinite limited amount.)

Un grand nombre des personnes que j'ai vue, a large number of the people whom I have seen. (Here there is no partitive idea, but the article limits 'persons.' "Those people whom," &c.)

Il n'y a d'utile que ce qui est juste (Mirabeau). There is nothing expedient but that which is just.

Vous ferez du bien à vous même (Fénelon), You will do (some) good to yourself.



CHAPTER III.—THE NOUN.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

69. Two Genders.—All nouns are either masculine or feminine. There is no neuter gender of nouns. Gender, in French grammar, is an attribute of the word, not of the thing which the word stands for. It is to a large extent grammatical, not logical or real.

70. Masculine Nouns.—The following classes of nouns are masculine :

1. Names of male beings and offices :

Le maître, the master.

Un chien, a dog.

Le cheval, the horse.

Le Français, the Frenchman.

2. Names of the seasons, months, days, points of the compass, trees, *classes* of animals, metals, and chemical elements, are masculine :

Le printemps, Spring.

Le lundi, Monday.

Le chêne, the oak.

L'hydrogène, hydrogen.

Le cuivre, copper.

Un mammifère, a mammal.

Le nord, le sud, l'est, l'ouest, the North, the South, the East, the West (see Sec. 54, 3, Ex.).

Exceptions.—The names of some trees are feminine by termination (see next Sec.) :

L'yeuse, the yew.

L'ébène, the ebony.

La vigne, the vine.

L'aubépine, the hawthorn.

3. Adjectives, verbs, &c., used as nouns, are masculine :

Le rouge, le noir et le blanc.

the red, black, and white.

Le boire et le manger, eating and drinking.

Le romantique et le classique, the romantic and classical.

4. Most nouns derived from masculine or neuter Latin nouns are masculine :

Écuyer, squire (scutarius).

Évêque, bishop (episcopus).

Pécheur, sinner (peccator).

Pêcheur, fisherman (piscator).

Ami, friend (amicus).

Ciel, sky (cælum).

Plomb, lead (plumbum).

Jour, day (diurnus).

Fenouil, fennel (fœniculum).

Peril, danger (periculum).

Venin, poison (venenum).

Note.—This, of course, includes many nouns which also come under other rules, but is perhaps the most practically useful rule of all.

Remarks.—Most nouns not feminine by termination (see next Sec.) are usually said to be masculine by termination. Such a rule would cover the same ground as those given, and be subject to many exceptions.

For compound nouns see Sec. 75.

The gender of many nouns is best learned by rote.

71. Feminine Nouns.—The following classes of nouns are feminine :

1. Names of female beings and offices are feminine :

La reine, the queen.

La vache, the cow.

La jument, the mare.

La colombe, the dove.

2. Most names of fruits, flowers, and herbs are feminine :

La pomme, the apple.

La rose, the rose.

La cerise, the cherry.

La poire, the pear.

La sauge, sage.

L'asperge, asparagus.

3. Most nouns derived from Latin feminine nouns are feminine :

L'enfance, infancy (infantia).

La raison, reason (rationem).

La chandelle, the candle (candela).

La liaison, the connection (ligationem).

La taverne, the tavern (taberna).

La peinture, the painting (pictura).

La quête (see Sec. 32), the search (quæsitâ).

4. Most nouns ending in **e** mute or in **-ion**, **-çon**, **-son**, **-eur**, **-té**, and **-tié** are feminine "by termination" :

Une écriture, a writing (scriptura).
La victoire, victory (victoria).
La production, the production.
La maison, the house (mansionem).
La charité, charity (charitas).
L'amitié, friendship (amicitia).
La leçon, the lesson (lectionem).
La grandeur, grandeur.

Note.—Many of the nouns that come under this rule are also covered by the preceding one. In general, all rules of gender by termination must be subject to exceptions; but the Latin derivation will be a guide to most of these exceptions:

Le vice, vice (vitium).
Le courage, courage (cor).
Le soupçon, suspicion (suspicionem).
Le bonheur, happiness (hora).
Le malheur, misfortune (hora).
Le navire, the ship (navirium).
Le volume, the volume (volumen).
Le déisme, deism.
Le labour, labor (labor).

5. Six nouns ending in **-i** are feminine:

La foi , faith (fides).	La loi , law (lex). La fourmi , the ant (formica). L'après-midi , the afternoon.
La paroi , the wall (paries).	
La merci , mercy (mercedes).	

6. The rules for gender by termination may be summed up as follows:

a. Masculine are nouns ending in—

- (1.) A vowel or a double vowel.
Except a few in **-té**, **-tié**.
- (2.) A nasal sound, with or without a silent consonant after it.
Except a class in **-ion**, **-çon**, and **-son**.
- (3.) A consonant.
Except a class (about 1200) in **-eur**.
- (4.) Some ending in **-age**, **-ice**, **-iste**, **-aire**.

b. Feminine are nouns ending in—

- (1.) E mute preceded by a vowel.
With a few exceptions.
- (2.) -ane, -aine, -ine, -agne, -aigne, -ogne.
- (3.) -elle, -ille, -aille, -eille, -ouille.
- (4.) -ière, -ure.
- (5.) -ette, -otte.
- (6.) -asse, -esse, -isse, -ise, -ache, -éche, -iche, -oche, -uche.
- (7.) -ance, -ence.
- (8.) A large number (about 1200) of those in -eur, and many in -ion, -çon, -son.
- (9.) Abstract nouns in -té and -tié.

72. Special Rules for gender of nouns.

1. Titles of men remain masculine even when applied to women, as—

Un auteur, an author or authoress.

Un orateur, an orator, male or female.

Un écrivain, a writer, “ “

Le charlatan, the charlatan, male or female.

Le témoin, the witness, “ “

Note.—The feminine of the title of a man denotes the wife of the personage, as—

Madame la générale, the General's wife.

La préfète, the Prefect's wife.

2. A few nouns may be of either gender without change of form, viz.:

La foudre, the thunder (masculine when used figuratively, as, **Ce foudre de guerre**, this thunderbolt of war).

La sentinelle, the sentinel (sometimes masculine in poetry; apparently originally a collective or abstract noun).

La dupe, the dupe.

Un hymne (hymnus), a hymn (often feminine).

73. Double Forms.—Some nouns have a feminine, formed after the analogy of the feminine of adjectives. These are often called “adjective nouns.” The most common are:—

Berger, bergère,	shepherd, shepherdess.
Orphelin, orpheline,	orphan.
Ours (Sec. 53, 3), ourse,	bear, she-bear.
Ami, amie,	friend.
Chien, chienne,	dog, slut.
Chrétien, Chrétienne (Sec. 54),	Christian.
Lion, lionne,	lion, lioness.
Jumeau, jumelle,	twin.
Poète, poëtesse,	poet, poetess.
Âne, ânesse,	ass, jenny.
Prince, princesse,	prince, princess.
Dieu, déesse,	God, goddess.
Danseur, danseuse,	dancer.
Menteur, menteuse,	liar.
Enchanteur, enchanteresse,	enchanter.
Pécheur, pécheresse,	sinner.
Pêcheur, pêcheuse,	fisherman, fisherwoman.
Acteur, actrice,	actor, actress.
Serviteur, servante,	servant.
Héros, héroïne (Sec. 45),	hero, heroine.

Note.—As in English, some nouns have a feminine of entirely distinct form and origin. These require no further notice. Examples :

Homme, femme,	man, woman.
Père, mère,	father, mother.
Oncle, tante,	uncle, aunt.
Coq, poule,	cock, hen.

74. Double Gender.—Some nouns have different meanings in the different genders, with no change of form. This double meaning often arises from a difference of origin. The following list contains all those in common use :

List of Nouns with Double Gender.

Un aide, a helper,	une aide, a help.
Un aigle, an eagle,	une aigle, a standard.
Un air (aer), an air,	une aire (area), an area.
Un aune (alnus), an alder,	une aune (ulna), an ell.
Le barbe (barbarie), the horse,	la barbe (barba), the beard.

Le Bourgogne (a country),	la bourgogne (a wine).
Le coche (concha), the coach,	la coche , the sow.
Le décime , $\frac{1}{10}$ of a franc,	la décime , the tithe.
Un écho (see Sec. 40), an echo,	(une) Écho , Echo, a nymph.
Un exemple , an instance,	une exemple , a copy.
Le garde , the defender,	la garde , safe-keeping.
Le guide , the guide,	la guide , the rein.
Le livre (liber), the book,	la livre (libra), the pound.
Le manche , the handle,	la manche , the sleeve.
Le mémoire , the bill, memoir,	la mémoire , memory.
Merci , thanks,	la merci , mercy.
Le mode , the mood,	la mode , the fashion.
Un office , a duty, service,	une office , a pantry, etc.
Le page (<i>παῖδιον</i>), the boy,	la page (pagina), the page.
Le paillasse , the clown,	la paillasse , straw-bed.
Le palme (palmus), palm of the hand,	la palme (palma), palm-tree.
Le pendule , the pendulum,	la pendule , the clock.
Le plane , the plane-tree,	la plane , the plane, a tool.
Le poêle (pensiles), the stove,	la poêle (patella), frying-pan.
Le poste (positum), the station,	la poste (posita), post-office.
Le pourpre , purple color,	la pourpre , the royal purple.
Le prétexte (prætextum), the pretext,	la prétexte (prætexta), a garment.
Le somme (somnus), the nap, sleep,	la somme (summa), the sum.
Le souris (subridere), the smile,	la souris (sorex), the mouse.
Le temple (templum), the temple, building for worship,	la tempe (formerly temple, from tempora), temple of the head.
Le tour (tornus), the turn, trick,	la tour (turris), the tower.
Le trompette , the trumpeter,	la trompette , the trumpet.
Le vapeur , the steamboat,	la vapeur , steam, gas.
Le vase , the vase,	la vase , slime, mud.
Le voile , the veil,	la voile , the sail.

75. Compound Nouns.—The gender of compound nouns is as follows :

1. Compound nouns formed of two nouns take the gender of the first, as—

Le chou-fleur, the cauliflower.

La chèvrefeuille, the honeysuckle.

2. Compound nouns containing but one noun as an element, take the gender of that one :

Une porte-plume, a penholder.

Le contre-coup, the rebound.

3. Compound nouns formed from indeclinable words are masculine (Sec. 70, 3) :

Le passe-volant, the intruder.

Le pourboire, the drink-money.

Le vol-au-vent, a kind of pie.

NUMBER OF NOUNS.

76. General Rule for Number.—The plural of nouns is generally formed by adding **s** to the singular :

Le poisson, the fish, **les** poissons.

Le dent, the tooth, **les** dents.

L'homme, the man, **les** hommes.

Note.—In polysyllables ending in **-nt**, many writers omit the **t** in the plural :

L'enfant, the child, **les** enfans.

Le géant, the giant, **les** géans.

Le sentiment, sentiment, **les** sentimens.

77. Special Rules for Number.

1. Nouns ending in **-au** and **-eu** add **x** to form the plural :

Le feu, the fire, **les** feux.

Le lieu, the place, **les** lieux.

Le jeu, the game, **les** jeux.

2. Seven nouns ending in **-ou** form the plural in **x**, after the analogy of nouns in **-au** and **-eu**. They are all masculine.

Le bijou, the jewel, **les** bijoux, jewels.

Le caillou, the pebble, **les** cailloux, pebbles.

Le chou, the cabbage, **les** choux, cabbages.

Le genou, the knee, **les** genoux, knees.

Le hibou, the owl, **les** hiboux, the owls.

Le joujou, the plaything, **les** joujoux, playthings.

Le pou, the louse, **les** poux, lice.

Note.—Other nouns ending in **-ou** add **s** to form the plural :

Le clou , the nail,	les clous , nails.
Le trou , the hole,	les trous , holes.

3. Nouns ending in **-al** form the plural by changing **-al** into **-aux** :

Le cheval , the horse,	les chevaux , horses.
L'hôpital , the hospital,	les hôpitaux , hospitals.
Le métal , the metal,	les métaux , metals.
Le rival , the rival,	les rivaux , rivals.

Exceptions.—The following nouns ending in **-al** form the plural by adding **s**. They are all masculine :

L'aval , the surety,	les avals , sureties.
Le bal , the ball,	les bals , balls.
Le bocal , the jar,	les bocals , jars.
Le cal , the callosity,	les cals , callosities.
Le carnaval , the carnival,	les carnivals , carnivals.
Le chacal , the jackal,	les chacals , jackals.
Le local , the premises,	les locaux , places, premises.
Le narval , the narwhal,	les narvals , narwhals.
Le pal , the pale (heraldry),	les pals .
Le régâl , the entertainment,	les régals .
Le serval , the serval,	les servals .

4. A few nouns ending in **-ail** form the plural in **-aux** after the analogy of nouns in **-al**. They are :

Le bail , the lease,	les baux , leases.
Le corail , the coral,	les coraux , corals.
L'émail , the enamel,	les émaux , enamels.
Le plumail , the feather-brush,	les plumaux , brushes.
Le soupirail , the air-hole,	les soupiraux , air-holes.
Le vantaïl , the leaf of a double door,	les vantaux , double doors.
Le vitrail , the church window,	les vitraux , windows.

One has both forms, **l'ail**, garlic, **ails** or **aux**.

Note.—Other nouns ending in **-ail** form the plural in **s**, as—

Le portail , the portal,	les portails , doorways.
Le gouvernail , the helm,	les gouvernails , helms.
L'éventail , the fan,	les éventails , fans.

5. Nouns ending in **s**, **x**, or **z**, undergo no change to form the plural, as—

Le fils, the son, **les fils**, sons.
Le nez, the nose, **les nez**, noses.
La voix, the voice, **les voix**, voices.

6. The following may be said to be irregular :

Le bétail, the cattle, **les bestiaux**.
L'œil, the eye, **les yeux**, the eyes.

(Through the Old French *iois*, *ioauls*, *ieus*.)

Œil has also the regular plural in **œils-de-bœuf**, bull's-eye windows, or circles in soup.

Three have two forms in the plural, with different meanings :

Le ciel, heaven, sky, { **ciels**, climate, skies of pictures.
 { **cieux**, heavens.

L'aïeul, ancestor, { **aïeuls**, ancestors.
 { **aïeux**, grandfathers.

Le travail, work, labor, { **travails**, labors.
 { **travaux**, public business.

7. Proper names are usually indeclinable, but some writers add the mark of the plural when proper names are used with numerals, as—

Les deux Racine, {
Les deux Racines, } the two Racines.

Les deux Rousseau, {
Les deux Rousseaux, } the two Rousseaus.

78. Double Meanings.—Some nouns have different meanings in the two numbers. The following list contains those in common use :

L'aboi (mas.), barking,	les abois , death-struggle, (at) bay.
L'arrêt (mas.), judgment, decision,	les arrêts , arrest.
L'assise (fem.), the layer, stratum,	les assises , assizes.
Le ciseau , the chisel,	les ciseaux , scissors.
L'eau (fem.), the water,	les eaux , watering-places, water-works.
L'effet (mas.), the effect,	les effets , property, effects.
L'épingle (fem.), the pin,	les épingles , pin money.
Le fer , the iron, sword,	les fers , fetters, irons.
Le gage , the pledge, pawn,	les gages , wages.

Le limbe , the limb,	les limbes , limbo, limbus
La lunette , the telescope,	les lunettes , eye-glasses.
L'ouïe (fem.), hearing,	les ouïes , gills of a fish.
La troupe , the troop, band,	les troupes , soldiers, troops.
La trousse , bundle, truss,	les trousses , breeches.
L'usage (mas.), use, habit,	les usages , prayer-books.
La vacance , vacancy in office,	les vacances , holidays.

79. Collective Nouns.—A few nouns are used only in the plural. The following list contains those in common use :

Les alentours (mas.), neighborhood.
Les annales (fem.), annals, histories.
Les confins (mas.), borders, confines.
Les délices (fem.), delight, pleasures.
Les dépens (mas.), expense.
Les entrailles (fem.), entrails.
Les environs (mas.), neighborhood.
Les frais (mas.), expenses.
Les matines (fem.), morning prayers, Matins .
Les mœurs (fem.), manners, morals.
Les pleurs (mas.), tears. (V. Hugo has pleur .)
Les ténèbres (fem.), darkness, shades.
Les thermes (mas.), hot baths.
Les vêpres (fem.), evening prayers, Vespers .

80. Number of Compounds.—Compound nouns take the mark of the plural in each substantive which composes them, viz. :

1. When a compound noun is composed of two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural, as—

Le beau-frère , brother-in-law, beaux-frères .
Le chef-lieu , principal town, chefs-lieux .
Le loup-garou , bug-bear, were-wolf, loups-garous .
Le pot-pourri , medley, pots-pourris .
Le blanc-bec (white-beak), green-horn, blancs-becs .

Exception.—When a preposition comes between the two nouns which form a compound noun, the first only takes the mark of the plural, as—

Les arcs-en-ciel, the rainbows.

Les chefs-d'œuvre, the master-pieces.

Les aides-de-camp, the aides-de-camp.

Les eaux-de-vie, the brandies.

2. When a compound noun is composed of a noun and some indeclinable word, only the noun takes the mark of the plural, as—

Les semi-tons, the semitones.

Les sans-culottes, the ragamuffins.

Les vice-rois, the viceroys.

3. When a compound word is entirely composed of indeclinable words, it takes no change to form the plural, as—

Les passe-partout, the master-keys.

Des pourboire, drink-money, fees.

Des tout-ou-rien, neck-or-nothings.

Note.—Usage varies a little with regard to the last two cases. The Academy authorizes the above.

CASE OF NOUNS.

81. There are in French no case-endings and no declensions of nouns. Pronouns, however, have separate forms in most instances for three different cases, the case of the Subject (Nominative), the case of the Direct Object (Accusative), and the case of the Indirect Object (Dative). These will be treated of in the chapter on pronouns.

The Nominative case of nouns is used as in English, for the Subject of the verb, and as the case of direct address (Vocative).

The Possessive case of nouns is supplied by the use of the preposition *de*.

The Indirect Object (Dative case) of nouns is supplied by the use of the preposition *à*.

The Direct Object (Accusative case) or Objective case of nouns alone requires special notice. It is used very nearly as in English :

1. The objective case is used for the direct object of transitive verbs, and also after some intransitive verbs (accusative of kindred meaning in Latin):

Dieu a créé le ciel et la terre. God made the heaven and the earth.

Jouer un jeu, to play a play (a game).

Note.—When the verb governs two objects, one is often a predicate noun, as in English :

De simple soldat, on le fit sergent. From private soldier they made him sergeant.

2. The objective case is used absolutely, to express time, distance, place, price, &c., as in English :

Ils travaillèrent toute la nuit, they worked all night.

Le onze septembre, nous découvrimus la terre. The 11th of September we discovered land.

J'ai couru toute la ville. I ran through the whole city.

On ne le trouve nulle part. They don't find him anywhere.

Vendre mille louis d'or, to sell for 1000 gold louis.

Note.—Similar is the elliptical use of the objective case in the expressions—**bon jour!** good day ! ; **bon soir!** good evening ! ; **bon voyage!** pleasant journey !, &c.

82. **Phrases with Nouns.**—A noun with a preposition often forms an adjective phrase, which is usually best translated by a compound noun :

Le pot au lait, the milk pitcher.

(But, **le pot de lait,** the pitcher of milk.)

La femme aux huitres, the oyster-woman.

La salle à manger, the dining-room.

ε **La pot à la crème,** the cream-pot.

Le mal de tête, the headache.

Un lit de plumes, a feather-bed.

Un bateau à vapeur, a steamboat.

Un maison à deux étages, a two-story house.

CHAPTER IV.—ADJECTIVES.

GENDER OF ADJECTIVES.

83. General Rules.—Adjectives have in French two genders only, masculine and feminine. The feminine always ends in *e* mute, and often differs from the masculine also in other ways. See special rules in succeeding sections.

General rules are as follows :

1. Adjectives ending in *e* mute have the same form in the feminine :

La jeune princesse et le jeune prince, the young princess and the young prince.

2. Most adjectives not ending in *e* mute, add *e* mute to form the feminine :

Petit, petite, small.		Pur, pure, pure.
Joli, jolie, pretty.		Clair, claire, clear.
Grand, grande, great.		Civil, civile, civil.

Note.—Adjectives ending in *-gu* take a diæresis with the *e* mute, which remains silent.

Aigu, aiguë, acute.	Contigu, contiguë, contiguus.
Ambigu, ambiguë, ambiguus.	

84. Special Rule.—Many adjectives derived from the Latin have in the masculine a shortened or weakened form, and the feminine returns to the stronger form of the word from which it is derived. Some others follow the analogy of these. These changes are as follows :

85. Adjectives ending in *-el*, *-eil*, *-ol*, *-ul*, *-en*, *-on*, *-et*, *-ot*, or *-s*, generally double the last letter, those in *-f* change *f* to *v*, those in *-x* change *x* to *s*, and those in *-er*, *-ef*, change *e* to *è*, before adding *e* mute (having the same effect on the sound as the doubling of the consonant) :

Cruel, cruelle (crudelis), cruel.
Pareil, pareille (pariculus, from par), equal.
Mol, molle (mollis), soft.
Nul, nulle (nullus), none.

Ancien, ancienne (Late Lat. *antianus*, from *ante*), ancient.

Bon, bonne (*bonus*), good.

Muet, muette (*mutus*), silent.

Net, nette (*nitidus*), neat.

Sot, sotté (Rabbin. *schoteh* ?), foolish.

Gros, grosse (*grossus*), big, coarse.

Exprès, expresse (*expressus*), express.

Bref, brève (*brevis*), short.

Curieux, curieuse (*curiosus*), curious.

Jaloux, jalouse (*zelosus*), jealous.

Leger, légère (Late Lat. *leviarius*), light.

Fier, fière (*ferus*), proud.

Note.—One in *-il* follows this analogy :

Gentil, gentille (*gentilis*), elegant.

Exception 1.—Some ending in *-et* follow the general rule, adding *e* mute and taking the grave accent. These are mostly from Latin adjectives in *-etus*. They are—

Complet, complète (*completus*), complete.

Concret, concrète (*concretus*), concrete.

Discret, discrète (*discretus*), discreet.

Inquiet, inquiète (*inquietus*), restless.

Replet, replète (*repletus*), lusty, full.

Secret, secrète (*secretus*), secret.

Excep. 2.—A few in *-ot* follow the general rule, simply adding *e* mute, viz. :

Cagot, cagote (*canis Gothus*), hypocritical.

Dévot, dévôte (*devotus*), devout.

Idiot, idiote (*idiota*), idiotic.

Manchot, manchote (Late Lat. *mancus*), one-armed.

Mat, mate, checkmate.

Prêt, prête (*præstus*), ready.

Ragot, ragote, short, undersized.

Excep. 3.—A few in *s* also follow the general rule :

Français, française, French.

Mauvais, mauvaise, bad, evil.

Obtus, obtuse (*obtusus*), obtuse.

Ras, rase (*rasus*), smooth, shorn, &c.

Excep. 4.—One in **x** and one in **l** also follow the general rule, only adding **e** mute, viz. :

Préfix, préfixe (præfixus), appointed, prefixed.

Espagnol, espagnole, Spanish.

86. 1. Five Adjectives ending in **l**, have two forms in the masculine, the first used before a consonant, and the second before a vowel sound, viz. :

Bel, beau, fem. **belle** (bellus), beautiful.

Fol, fou, fem. **folle** (follis), foolish.

Mol, mou, fem. **molle** (mollis), soft.

Nouvel, nouveau, fem. **nouvelle** (novellus), new.

Vieil, vieux, fem. **vieille** (vetulus), old.

Note.—Of these **vieil** has either form before a vowel sound : **vieil homme** ; **vieux ivrogne**. The others sometimes use the first form before a vowel sound when used adverbially : **mol et doux** ; **bel et bien**, &c.

2. Adjectives ending in **c** generally have the feminine in **-que**, and those in **-ng** have the feminine in **-gue**, in order to preserve the hard sound of the **c** and **g**, as—

Caduc, caduque, infirm.

Long, longue, long.

Public, publique, public.

Oblong, oblongue, oblong.

Turc, turque, Turkish.

Note.—One retains the **c** and also adds **-que** :

Grec, grecque, Greek.

Exception.—A few ending in **c** have in the feminine the ending **-che**, viz. :

Blanc, blanche, white.

Franc, franche, free.

Sec, sèche, dry.

So also, by the same analogy—

Frais, fraîche, fresh.

87. Irregular Adjectives.—Some adjectives are said to be irregular in the feminine ; but these may usually be explained by the Latin derivation, or the analogy of some of the above classes.

Absous, absoute (absolutus), absolved.

Benin, benigne (benignus), benign.

Coi, coite (quietus), snug, quiet.
Doux, douce (dulcis), sweet.
Faux, fausse (falsus), false.
Favori, favorite, favorite, darling.
Frais, fraîche, fresh.
Jumeau, jumelle (gemellus), twin.
Malin, maligne (malignus), malign.
Roux, rousse (russus), red.
Tiers, tierce (tertius), third, tertian.
Vieux (vieil), vieille, old.

88. Defective Adjectives.—Some adjectives are found only in one gender.

1. The following are only masculine :

Châtain, chestnut-colored.
Dispos, nimble, alert.
Fat, foppish.
Hebreu, Hebrew.
Négrier, slave ; **vaisseau négrier**, slave ship.

2. The following are only feminine :

Crasse, gross ; **ignorance crasse**, crass ignorance.
Cursive, running ; **écriture cursive**, running hand.
Effectrice (with cause), efficient cause.
Franque (with langue), Frankish language.
Océane (with mer), world-ocean, great sea.
Plénière, plenary (with indulgence, &c.).
Romane (with langue), Romance language.

Note.—The adjective **grand** is often used indeclinably in the phrases **grand mère**, **grand mères**, **grand rue**, &c., usually written with an apostrophe which originated in mistake : **grand'mère**, **grand'tante**, &c. This form is a remnant of the Old French indeclinable adjective.

89. Plural of Adjectives.—Adjectives form their plural in general by the same rules as nouns.

1. Five adjectives which have a double form in the masculine singular, **bel**, **nouvel**, **vieil**, **fol**, and **mol**, form a plural masculine only in the form ending in **u** :

beaux, **nouveaux**, **vieux**, **fous**, **mous**.

2. One in **-eu** has the plural in **s** :

bleu, bleus (not **bleux**), blue.

3. A few in **-al** have the plural in **-als**, not in **-aux**, viz.:

fatal, final, matinal, natal, naval, pascal :—**fatals, finals, &c.**

4. A few in **-al** are often found with **-als** in the plural, though usage favors the plural in **-aux**, viz.:

amical, boréal, conjugal, filial, frugal, labial, lingual, médial, nasal, nuptial, oval, pastoral, pectoral, spécial, total, virginal, vocal.

5. A few in **-al** have no masculine plural, viz.:

canonical, frugal, glacial, jovial, théâtral.

One has no feminine plural, viz. : **amical.**

90. Plural of Compound Adjectives.—When the first part of a compound adjective is considered as used adverbially, qualifying the second part, it is invariable, and the second part alone takes the mark of the plural. When the two parts are considered as each separately qualifying the noun, both take the mark of the plural. Examples :

Demi-sauvages, half-civilized.

Des enfans nouveau-nés, new-born infants.

De l'avoine clair-semée, oats thinly sown.

Des rois tout-puissants, all-powerful kings.

Des oranges aigres-douces, acid-sweet oranges.

Les cheveux châtains-bruns, chestnut-brown hair.

Une femme toute-puissante, an all-powerful woman.

Note.—Exceptions occur, where the principle seems lost sight of, and usage varies somewhat.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

91. General Rule.—An adjective agrees with the noun which it qualifies in gender and number.

Special Rules.

1. An adjective qualifying two or more nouns is in the plural :

J'ai trouvé la porte et la fenêtre fermées. I found the door and the window closed.

Une résolution et une responsabilité si terribles, so terrible a resolution and responsibility.

2. An adjective qualifying two nouns of different genders is masculine, as—

Mon frère et ma sœur sont très-bons. My brother and my sister are very kind.

3. An adjective qualifying two nouns connected by **ou**, 'or,' or with the conjunction omitted, agrees in gender with the nearest :

Le fer, la flamme, était tout prête. The sword, the fire were all ready.

Un courage ou une prudence étonnante, an astonishing courage or prudence.

4. Adjectives used adverbially are indeclinable :

Ces roses sentent (Sec. 35, 5), **très-bon.** These roses smell good.

Les cerfs courent très-vite. Stags run very fast.

92. Exceptions and Anomalous Forms.

1. The adjectives **demi**, 'half,' **nu**, 'bare,' **excepté**, 'except,' **y compris**, 'included,' **supposé**, 'supposed,' **ci-joint** and **ci-inclus**, 'enclosed,' 'annexed,' are invariable when they precede the noun to which they belong, but agree with the noun when they follow it :

Une demi-heure, half an hour.

Une heure et demie, an hour and a half.

Marcher nu-pieds, to walk bare-foot.

Avoir les pieds nus, to have the feet bare.

Excepté les deux premières pages, } the two first pages ex-
Les deux premières pages exceptées, } cepted.

Y compris la somme de cent francs, including the sum of 100 francs.

Copie de ma lettre est ci-jointe, a copy of my letter is annexed.

2. The adjective **feu**, 'deceased,' 'late,' is invariable when it precedes other modifiers of the noun (article or pronoun), but agrees with the noun when it stands next to it :

Feu la reine, or, la feue reine, the late queen.

Feu mes frères, or, mes feues frères, my deceased brothers.

3. Color is often expressed by a noun used apparently as an indeclinable adjective, but really with an ellipsis of *couleur de* :

Des souliers (couleur de) rose, rose-colored shoes.

Des gants (couleur de) soufre, yellow gloves (sulphur-color).

Couleur is here used absolutely. See Sec. 81.

Remark.—For adjectives requiring certain prepositions after them, see Sec. 168.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

93. General Rule.—The adjective usually follows the noun which it qualifies ; but its position is often changed for euphony or emphasis, as follows :

1. Monosyllabic adjectives generally precede the nouns which they qualify :

Un vieux soldat, an old soldier.

Le bleu manteau, the blue cloak.

Une longue entreprise, a long undertaking.

2. In general, the shorter word precedes :

Lois sanguinaires, bloody laws.

Un lion furieux, a furious lion.

Des régions lointaines, distant regions.

Note.—These rules are of course subject to exceptions, especially in poetry ; indeed the position of words, where it does not affect the meaning, belongs to rhetoric rather than grammar, and is somewhat affected by taste and by perception of the so-called “genius of the language.”

94. Adjectives with Double Meanings.—Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they follow or precede the nouns which they qualify :

Un homme brave, a courageous man.

Un brave homme, a kind, good man.

Une certaine histoire, a certain history, story.

Une histoire certaine, a reliable history

Un cher enfant, a dear child.

Une robe chère, a costly dress.

Une commune voix, an unanimous voice.

- Une voix commune**, an ordinary voice.
Une cruelle femme, a cruel woman.
Une femme cruelle, a disagreeable woman.
Une fausse clef, a false key.
La clef fausse, the wrong key.
Un grand homme, a great man.
Un homme grand, a big man.
L'air grand, a noble face, appearance.
Le grand air, distinguished manners.
Un honnête homme, an honest man.
Un homme honnête, a nice, good man.
Un mauvais air, an awkward appearance.
L'air mauvais, a bad, wicked expression.
Un nouveau livre, a new book (just out).
Un livre nouveau, a new book (an additional one).
Un livre neuf, a new book (not worn).
Un nouvel habit, another coat.
Un habit nouveau, a fashionable coat.
Un pauvre historien, a bad historian.
Un historien pauvre, an indigent historian.
Une petite femme, a small woman.
Une femme petite, a mean woman.
Un plaisant conte, a funny, ridiculous story.
Un conte plaisant, an agreeable story.
Un seul enfant, a single child.
Un enfant seul, a child alone.
Un simple soldat, a mere private soldier.
Un soldat simple, a foolish soldier.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

95. Three Degrees.—Adjectives have in French, as in English, three degrees of comparison, the positive or ordinary form, the comparative, and the superlative. The last two are formed as is described in the following sections:

Comparative Degree.

1. The comparative degree is formed (with three exceptions), by prefixing the adverb **plus**, 'more,' to the positive.

L'honneur est plus puissant, plus sacré que la loi. Honor is more powerful, more sacred than law.

Des maux encore plus longs et plus cruels que les siens (Fénelon), evils more continued and more cruel than their own.

2. A comparative of diminution is also formed with the adverb **moins**, 'less':

Il est moins malheureux que son frère. He is less unfortunate than his brother.

3. Three adjectives retain, in the comparative degree, special forms, derived from the Latin, viz.:

Bon, good,—**meilleur**, better (Lat. melior).

Mauvais, bad,—**pire**, worse (Latin pejor).

Petit, small,—**moindre**, less (Lat. minus).

Note.—**Petit** and **mauvais** have also the forms **plus petit**, **plus mauvais**.

96. Superlative Degree.—The superlative degree is formed by placing the definite article or a possessive adjective before the comparative and in agreement with the noun:—

L'homme le plus fort, the strongest man.

Les villes les plus grandes, the greatest cities.

Le meilleur ami, the best friend.

Elle est moins jolie que sa sœur. She is less pretty than her sister.

La distinction la moins exposé à l'envie, the distinction least exposed to envy.

L'homme du monde le plus robuste, the most robust man in the world.

97. Comparisons.—In comparing different things together the measure of difference is expressed by the preposition **de**, with the noun of quantity or measure:

Je suis de deux ans plus âgé que vous. I am two years older than you (older by two years).

Vous êtes plus grand que moi de trois pouces. You are taller than I am by three inches (thumbs).

Celui-ci est de beaucoup supérieur. This one is much superior.

98. Reciprocal Comparison is expressed by the following phrases, viz.:

1. **Plus—moins—moins, plus—moins, &c.**, without the article:

Plus il pleure, plus je ris. The more he weeps the more I laugh.

Plus je fais, moins je gagne. The more I do the less I earn.

2. **Autant—que** expresses equality in quantity ; **aussi—que** expresses equality in degree :

Le chien est aussi fort que le loup. The dog is as strong as the wolf.

Autant d'eau que de vin, as much wine as water.

Il est aussi sage que vaillant. He is as wise as he is brave.

Autant de tués que de blessés, as many dead as wounded.

3. **Si—que**, 'so—as,' is used after a negative :

Il n'est pas si riche que vous. He is not so rich as you.

4. **D'autant plus, d'autant moins**, means 'so much the more,' 'so much the less':

Il est d'autant plus coupable. He is so much the more guilty.

NUMERALS.

99. Cardinal Numbers.—Table :

1. Un, fem. une.	19. Dix-neuf (di-neuf).
2. Deux (deu).	20. Vingt (vin').
3. Trois (troi).	21. Vingt et un (vin'-té-un).
4. Quatre (katr).	22. Vingt-deux (vin'-deu).
5. Cinq (sin', Sec. 51).	23. Vingt-trois (vin'-troi).
6. Six (siss).	&c.
7. Sept (sèt).	30. Trente (trin't).
8. Huit (ui).	40. Quarante (karan't).
9. Neuf (neuf).	50. Cinquante (sin'kan't).
10. Dix (diss)	60. Soixante (soissan't).
11. Onze.	70. Soixante-dix.
12. Douze.	71. Soixante-onze.
13. Treize (tréz).	72. Soixante-douze.
14. Quatorze (katorz).	&c.
15. Quinze (kin'z).	80. Quatre-vingts (vin').
16. Seize (séz).	81. Quatre-vingt-un.
17. Dix-sept (di-sèt).	&c.
18. Dix-huit (di-zui).	90. Quatre-vingt-dix.

<p>91. Quatre-vingt-onze (vin-ton'z). &c.</p> <p>100. Cent (san').</p> <p>101. Cent un (san'tun'). &c.</p> <p>200. Deux cents.</p>	<p>201. Deux cent un. 1000. Mille (mil). 1001. Mille un. 2000. Deux mille. 1,000,000. Un million (mi-lion'). Un milliard is a thousand millions.</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Notes.—1. These numerals are indeclinable except **un**, fem. **une**; **cent**, plural **cents**; **vingt** when joined with a preceding **quatre**; and **million**. **Cent** and **quatre-vingts** before another numeral, however, are indeclinable :

Trois cents personnes, 300 persons.
Sept cent vingt écoliers, 720 pupils.
Quatre-vingts livres, 80 pounds.
Quatre-vingt-douze aunes, 92 yards.

2. **Million** is always preceded by **un** or a numeral and followed by **de** :

Un million d'épingles, a million pins.
Trois millions de soldats, three million soldiers.

3. In dates 1000 is **mil**, not **mille** :

L'an mil huit cent soixante-cinq, the year 1865.

4. Some of the compound numerals may be connected by the conjunction **et**, 'and,' viz.:

vingt et un, **soixante et dix**, **cent et un**, **trente et un**, **quarante et un**, &c.

5. Collective numbers are sometimes used, viz.:

Une huitaine, a series or collection of eight.
Une dizaine, a ten. **Tous deux**, both (all two).
Une douzaine, a dozen; **une quinzaine**, 15, &c.
Une centaine, 100; **un millier**, 1,000,000.

100. Expressions of Size.—To express size the verb **avoir**, 'to have,' is used, and **largeur**, 'length,' **hauteur**, 'height,' **profondeur**, 'depth,' &c., with **de** :

Les murs avaient deux cents pieds de hauteur. The walls were two hundred feet high.

Il a trent pieds de largeur, it is thirty feet wide.

Note.—Two other constructions are sometimes used to express size :

1. **Cette corde a trent pieds de long.** That rope is 30 feet long.
2. **Le fleuve est large de 350 pieds.** The river is 350 feet wide.

101. Expressions of Age.—Age is also expressed with **avoir**, as—

Quelle âge a-t-elle ? How old is she ?

Elle a trente deux ans. She is 32 years old.

102. Numbers of Sovereigns.—The cardinal numbers are used to denote the number of a sovereign, except the first; for the second also either the cardinal or ordinal is used :

Napoleon premier, Napoleon first.

Charles second, or **deux**, Charles 2d.

Henri quatre, **Pie neuf**, Henry 4th, Pius 9th.

103. Days of the Month.—The cardinal numbers are used to denote the days of the month, except the first :

Le premier Mai, the first of May.

Le deux Fevrier, February second.

Le trois d'Avril, April third.

104. Expressions of Time.—The hours are expressed as follows :

Deux heures, two o'clock.

Trois heures et demi; half past three.

Trois heures moins un quart, a quarter to three.

Midi, twelve o'clock noon ; **minuit**, twelve at night.

(**Douze heures** is never used.)

Other expressions of time :

Tous les jours, every day.

Tous les deux jours, every second day.

D'aujourd'hui en huit, a week from to-day.

Il y a un an, a year ago.

105. Ordinal Numbers.—The ordinals, except first and second, are formed from the cardinals by adding **-ième**, eliding **e** mute when it ends the numeral, interposing **u** after **q**, and changing **f** to **v**, viz. :

1st, premier, fem. première, sometimes unième.
 2d, second, " seconde, " deuxième.
 5th, cinquième; 6th, sixième; 21st, vingt unième; 22d, vingt deuxième; 100th, centième, &c.

Notes.—1. Unième is used only after vingt, trente, &c.:

Le vingt et unième de sa classe, the 21st of his class.

2. Deuxième is used after vingt, trente, &c., and usually in a series containing more than two. Otherwise either second or deuxième may be used.

106. Fractional Numbers.—Fractions are, with three exceptions, expressed by the ordinals—

$\frac{1}{2}$, demi, fem. demie, agreeing with the noun.

$\frac{1}{3}$, un tiers; $\frac{1}{4}$, un quart; $\frac{1}{5}$, un cinquième; $\frac{1}{6}$, un sixième, &c.

Un pied et demi, trois livres et demie, une demi-livre, deux demi-pieds—a foot and a half, $3\frac{1}{2}$ pounds, $\frac{1}{2}$ pound, 2 half-feet.

Notes.—1. Some words meaning $\frac{1}{4}$ are—

Unè quartè, a quart; un quarteau, a quarter (of a ton); un quarteron, a quarter (of a pound); un quartier, a quarter (of beef, of veal, of a city.)

2. Et may be omitted in fractions:

Une aune et un quart, or, une aune un quart—a yard and a quarter.

CHAPTER V.—PRONOUNS.

THERE are five classes of pronouns, the Personal Pronoun, including the Possessive; the Demonstrative Pronoun; the Interrogative Pronoun; the Relative Pronoun; and the Indefinite Pronouns.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

107. Conjunctive and Disjunctive Forms.—The personal pronoun has two classes of forms, called Conjunctive and Disjunctive; the former used in direct connection with a verb, either as subject or object, and the latter standing alone, or with prepositions. All the forms are derived from the Latin ego, tu, ille, &c., and are as follows:

1. Personal Pronoun—Conjunctive Form.

		THIRD PERSON.				
		First Person.	Second Person.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Reflexive.
Singular.	Subject..... Indirect Object.... Direct Object.....	je, I. } to me. me, { me.	tu, } thee. te, { thee.	il, he. lui, to him. le, him.	elle, she. lui, to her. la, her. self. se, himself. herself.
Plural.	Subject..... Indirect Object.... Direct Object.....	we, } to us. nous, { us.	you, } to you. vous, { you.	ils, they. leur, to them. les, them.	elles, they. leur, to them. les, them. themselves. se, each other. self.

2. Personal Pronoun—Disjunctive Form.

		THIRD PERSON.				
		First Person.	Second Person.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Reflexive.
Singular.	Subject..... Indirect Object.... Direct Object.....	I. } to me. moi, { me.	thou, } to thee. toi, { thee.	he, } to him. lui, { him.	she, } to her. elle, { her.	self. } himself. soi, { herself.
Plural.	Subject..... Indirect Object.... Direct Object.....	we, } to us. nous, { us.	you, } to you. vous, { you.	they, } to them. eux, { them.	they, } to them. elles, { them.	themselves. } themselves. soi, { each other.

3. The following table gives a comparative view of both forms, using the Latin names of the cases, which are employed by many French grammarians :

The Personal Pronoun.

	First Person.		Second Person.		Third Masculine.		Third Feminine.		Reflexive.		
	Conjunc.	Disjunc.	Conjunc.	Disjunc.	Conjunc.	Disjunc.	Conjunc.	Disjunc.	Conjunc.	Disjunc.	
Singular.	Nominative....	je	moi	tu	toi	il	lui	elle	elle
	Dative.....	me	moi	te	toi	lui	lui	elle	elle	se	soi
	Accusative. ...	me	moi	te	toi	le	lui	la	elle	se	soi
Plural.	Nominative....	nous	nous	vous	vous	ils	eux	elles	elles
	Dative... ..	nous	nous	vous	vous	leur	eux	leur	elles	se	soi
	Accusative.....	nous	nous	vous	vous	les	eux	les	elles	se	soi

Note.—It will be noticed that the plural has but one form in the first person, nous, and but one in the second person, vous; that there is but one disjunctive form for all the cases in each person and number; and that the forms lui, elle, and elles, as well as nous and vous, may be either conjunctive or disjunctive.



108. Intensive Form.—The disjunctive personal pronoun has also an intensive form, made by the addition of *même*, ‘self,’ in the singular, and *mêmes* in the plural :

<i>moi-même</i> , myself.	}	<i>nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves.
<i>toi-même</i> , thyself.		<i>vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves.
<i>soi-même</i> , one’s self.		<i>eux-mêmes</i> ,
		<i>elles-mêmes</i> ,
		} themselves.

There is also the form *vous-même*, ‘yourself,’ used when the plural is applied to an individual.

109. Elision.—*Je*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, and *se*, lose their vowels before a vowel sound, except when used as enclitics. This elision is denoted by the apostrophe :

- J’ai*, I have. *Je l’aime*, I love him (or her).
- M’aimez vous* ? Do you love me ?
- Ai-je un livre* ? Have I a book ?
- Menez-le à Paris*. Take it (or him) to Paris.
- Rend-le avec usure*. Repay it with usury.

USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

110. Conjunctive Forms.—The conjunctive is the ordinary form of the pronoun, and is used when it stands in its usual position, and in its regular relation with a verb, either as subject, as direct object, or as indirect object :

1. The conjunctive form is used when the pronoun precedes its verb :

- Je ne te puis blamer*. I cannot blame thee.
- Je te le dis*. I tell it to thee.
- Ils ont quelques défauts, ma foi, je les leur passe* (Rousseau).
- They have some faults, but, on my faith, I forgive them them.

2. The conjunctive form of the pronoun is used after the verb, in questions. The subject is regularly repeated in questions, *il* or *elle* being placed after the verb as enclitics, with the hyphen :

- Le livre, est-il bon* ? Is the book good ?
- Ma mère, où est-elle* ? Where is my mother ? See Sec. 115, 2.

3. The pronoun *il* is used as the subject of impersonal, intransitive, and reflexive verbs, and is then really of the neuter gender :

Il est midi, il pleut. It is noon, it rains.
Il me semble, il est vrai. It seems to me, it is true.
Il sortait une fumée noire. There arose a black smoke.
Il se forme des hérésies. Heresies are forming.
Il s'élevait des tourbillons. There arose whirlwinds.
Il y a un an. A year ago (it there has a year).

4. The pronoun *le* is used in the predicate, referring to a clause, a phrase, or some circumstance mentioned or implied, where the English uses 'so,' 'it,' or 'that.' In this use *le* is really of the neuter gender :

Êtes-vous maîtresse ici? Are you mistress here?
Oui, je le suis. Yes, I am (am so, am that).
Madame, êtes-vous malade? *Oui, je le suis.*
 Madam, are you sick? Yes, I am (so, it, that).

(Compare the two following, where the pronoun refers to a person :)

Madame, êtes-vous la maîtresse ici? *Oui, je la suis.*

Madam, are you the mistress here? Yes, I am she.

Êtes-vous la malade? *Oui, je la suis.*

Are you the sick person? Yes, I am she.

Je le ferai si je le puis, I will do it if I can.

Vous me traitez de veuve; il est trop vrai que je le suis (Voltaire). You treat me as a widow; it is too true that I am so (one).

5. A pronoun is regularly repeated with each verb to which it stands in relation :

Il pleure, il rit, il chante. He weeps, laughs, sings.

Il m'insulte, m'outrage, et me calomnie. He insults, outrages, and slanders me.

111. Disjunctive Forms.—The disjunctive is the stronger form of a pronoun, and is used when the pronoun stands alone, and when it stands in an unusual or emphatic position :

1. The disjunctive form of the pronoun is used, when it stands alone, used absolutely (without direct grammatical relation, or with ellipsis of its verb), either in the subject or predicate nominative :

Moi, régner! I, to reign! (for me to reign!)

Je le sais, moi. I know it, I (for my part).

Qui dit cela? Moi, lui, eux, nous, vous.

Who says that? I, he, they, we, you.

C'est moi, ce sont eux, c'est vous, c'est lui.

It is I, it is they, it is you, it is he.

Travaillez comme lui. Work as he does (like him).

Il est plus jeune que moi. He is younger than I (am).

Il faut toujours être soi. One ought always to be himself.

Lui et moi, nous allons. He and I, we will go.

2. The disjunctive form of the pronoun is used when the direct object is placed after the verb :

Rends-moi chrétienne et libre. Make me a Christian and free.

Elle n'a que lui. She has only him.

La fortune nous a persécuté, lui et moi (Fénelon). Fortune has persecuted us, both him and me.

Exception.—When the imperative verb is followed by two object pronouns, the direct object comes first, and is conjunctive in form. (Because this is its regular position) :

Montrez-le-moi, show him to me.

Donnez-le-lui, give it to him.

3. The disjunctive form of the pronoun is used after prepositions :

Je parle de toi, de lui, d'eux, de vous.

I am speaking of thee, him, them, you.

Penser à soi, to think of one's self.

Sans moi, without me. **L'amour de soi,** self-love.

Je leur parle, or, je parle à eux, à elles. I speak to them.

4. The disjunctive form of the pronoun is sometimes used for emphasis :

Eux m'ont relevé. They picked me up.

Eux seuls seront exempts. They only shall be exempt.

Eux déchirent la France, et lui la déshonore (Ponsard). They (it is who) destroyed France, and he (it is who) dishonors her.

SPECIAL FORMS AND USAGES.

112. Vous and Tu.—**Vous** is used, like the English 'you,' in addressing a single person, and even in addresses to the Deity. **Tu** is used in addressing inferiors or intimate friends ; also in poetical and rhetorical addresses to personified objects and to the Deity :

Nature, tu ne peux pas mentir.

O nature, thou canst not lie.

113. Soi and Lui.—The reflexive **soi** is used when the subject to which it refers is of a universal or unlimited character ; especially when the subject is wanting, or is an indefinite pronoun :

Il est beau de triompher de soi (Corneille).

It is beautiful to conquer one's self.

On doit parler rarement de soi (Academy).

One ought to speak rarely of one's self.

La nature est aimable en soi (Academy).

Nature is amiable for herself.

Le chat ne paraît sentir que pour soi (Academy).

The cat seems to think only of itself.

Note.—When the subject is limited, either singular or plural, **lui, elle, &c.**, are used :

Perrin tire l'argent à lui (La Fontaine).

Perrin draws the money to himself.

Ils ont querelle entre eux (Academy).

They have a quarrel between themselves.

Exceptions occur on both sides :

Idomenée, revenant à soi (Fénelon). Idomeneus, coming to himself.

Les choses ne sont en elles-mêmes ni pures, ni impures (Montesquieu). Things are not in themselves either pure or impure.

114. Se, Leur, &c.—General Remarks :1. **Se** has often a reciprocal force :

Ils s'aiment, ils se flattent.

They love each other, they flatter each other.

2. **Lui**, it will be seen in the table, Sec. 107, can only be feminine in the conjunctive form ; hence, before the verb, **lui** may be either masculine or feminine, but after the verb (except an imperative), or with a preposition, it must be masculine :

Vous lui parlez, vous parlez à elle.

You are speaking to her.

3. **Leur**, it will be seen from the table, Sec. 107, is never a disjunctive form ; hence it cannot be used after the verb (except the imperative), but **à eux**, or **à elles**, takes its place :

Je leur parle, or, je parle à eux, or, à elles.

But,—**Donnez-le-leur**, give it to them.

Je vous parle, et aussi à eux (not leur).

I am speaking to you and also to them.

115. Position of Personal Pronouns.

1. The pronouns of the Subject and the Object generally both precede the verb, in the following order : 1st, the Subject ; 2d, the Indirect Object ; 3d, the Direct Object, except **lui** and **leur**, which always follow the direct object pronoun :

Je te le donne, je le lui donne.

I give it to thee, I give it to him.

2. In simple interrogative sentences the Subject Pronoun follows the verb, becomes an enclitic, and is joined to the verb by a hyphen. When this brings two vowel sounds together, a **t** is inserted to obviate the hiatus :

Vient-elle ? Is she coming ?

Me blame-t-il ? Does he blame me ?

Note.—This order is sometimes found in declaratory sentences, especially in poetry :

À peine avait-il parlé, scarcely had he spoken.
Volontiers, répondit-il. Willingly, he replied.
Dit-il, says he.

3. In affirmative commands the Object Pronouns follow the verb, 1st, the direct, and 2d, the indirect, both as enclitics :

Donnez-le-moi. Give it me.
Parlez-leur. Speak to them.

4. In negative commands the Object Pronouns precede the verb, 1st, the indirect, and then the direct, except **lui** and **leur**, which always follow the direct object :

Ne me le donnez pas. Do not give it to me.
Ne les leur envoyez pas. Do not send them to them.

CASE OF PRONOUNS.

116. The Use of the Cases of Personal Pronouns has already for the most part been described in giving their forms. See also Sec. 81, on the case of nouns. The case of the Subject (Nominative case) is used as the subject of the verb, and also in direct address; the case of the Direct Object, or Objective case (Accusative), is used as the object of the verb and after prepositions,—in each instance with a distinction between Conjunctive and Disjunctive forms, fully explained above.

The case of the Indirect Object (Dative case) is used as the indirect object of the verb, and also in a few peculiar usages which require special notice.

1. The pronoun of the indirect object is sometimes best translated by a possessive :

Il lui serra la main. He pressed his hand (to him the hand).
On ne lui connaît que deux ennemis. They knew only two enemies of his (only two enemies to him).

On lui frappait sur l'épaule. They struck him on his shoulder (to him on the shoulder).

2. The Indirect Object (Dative case) may express relations which require various prepositions in English :

L'ambition seul, lui inspira des crimes.

Ambition alone inspired crimes in him.

Je lui ai acheté une volume qu'il m'a fait payer cher.

I bought from him a volume for which he made me pay dear.

Il lui a demandé son nom. He asked of him his name.

Dites-lui, donc, de ne jamais écrire.

Say to him, then, never to write.

3. The Indirect Object (Dative case) has sometimes a meaning like the Latin "ethical dative" :

Imite-moi les anciens. Imitate the ancients (for me).

Glisse-moi sur la superficie (Voltaire). Skim over the surface.

On lui lia les pieds, on vous le suspendit (La Fontaine). They tied his feet, they hanged him (for you).

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

117. The Conjunctive Possessive Pronoun, or Possessive Adjective, *mon, fem. ma*, from the Latin *meus*, is declined and used as follows :

1. Table of Possessive Adjective.

Meaning.	Masculine.			Feminine.			Common.		
	my	thy	his, her	my	thy	his, her	our	your	their
Sing., all Cases,	mon	ton	son	ma	ta	sa	notre	votre	leur
Plu., all Cases,	mes	tes	ses	mes	tes	ses	nos	vos	leurs

2. The Possessive Adjective agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed, and in person with the possessor :

La mère et son fils et sa fille,

The mother and her son and her daughter.

3. Before a vowel sound the forms **mon, ton, and son** are used in place of **ma, ta, and sa**, to avoid the hiatus :

Son école (not **sa école**), his or her school.

Mon âme (not **ma âme**), my soul.

4. The possessive adjective is regularly repeated with each noun :

Mes frères et mes sœurs, my brothers and sisters.

5. Some idioms occur, with regard to the use of the Possessive Adjective :

a. It is not generally applied to the parts of the body or mind :

J'ai mal à la tête. I have a pain in my head.

Il a perdu l'esprit. He has lost his senses.

b. It is not used after verbs of changing :

Il a changé de religion. He has changed his religion.

Nous avons changé d'opinion. We have changed our opinion.

c. Some peculiar phrases :

Donnez-moi bientôt de vos nouvelles. Let me hear from you soon (give me soon of your news).

J'irai à votre rencontre. I shall go to meet you (to your meeting).

Ce sont de mes cousins. They are (some of) my cousins.

À mon égard, notre égard, &c., in regard to me, you, &c.

118. The Disjunctive (or Substantive) Possessive Pronoun, **mien**, is declined and used as follows :

1. Table of Possessive Pronouns.

MASCULINE.

Sing., all Cases.....	mien , mine.	tien , thine.	sien , his or hers.
Plur., all Cases.....	miens , mine.	tiens , thine.	siens , his or hers.

FEMININE.

Sing., all Cases.....	mienne , mine.	tienne , thine.	sienne , his or hers.
Plur., all Cases.....	miennes , mine.	tiennes , thine.	siennes , his or hers.

COMMON.

Sing., all Cases.....	nôtre , ours.	vôtre , yours.	leur , theirs.
Plur., all Cases.....	nôtres , ours.	vôtres , yours.	leurs , theirs.

Note that the disjunctive *vôtre* is distinguished from the conjunctive *votre*, by the circumflex.

The following table is added as showing the English meaning more clearly :

Another Table of Possessive Pronouns.

	Masculine.		Feminine.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1st Per.....	mien,	miens,	mienne,	miennes, mine.
2d Per.....	tien,	tiens,	tienne,	tiennes, thine.
3d Per.....	sien,	siens,	sienne,	siennes, his, hers, its,
1st, 2d, and 3d Per., <i>nôtre, nôtres, ours ; vôtre, vôtres, yours ; leur, leurs, theirs.</i>				

2. The Substantive Possessive Pronoun agrees in gender and number with a noun understood, expressing the object possessed and not the possessor, and is almost always preceded by the definite article, *le mien, les leurs, la vôtre, &c.* :

Avez-vous ma montre ou la vôtre ? J'ai la mienne.
 Have you my watch or yours ? I have my own.

Note.—The definite article is sometimes omitted, or replaced by the indefinite article :

Un mien frère ; une mienne cousine (Academy).
Un mien valet ; un sien portrait (Voltaire).
Ta Julie sera toujours tienne.
 Thy Julia will always be thine (Rousseau).

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

119. The Conjunctive (or Adjective) Demonstrative Pronoun, ce (cet before a vowel sound), is from the Latin ecce iste, through the Old French icist, cist, &c.

It is declined and used as follows :

1. The Demonstrative Ce.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Sing., all Cases....	ce (cet), this.	cette, this.
Plur., all Cases....	ces, these.	ces, these.

Note.—The form *cet* is used before a vowel sound, to avoid hiatus :

Ce monde, ce héros, cet arbre, cet homme-là, this world, this hero, this tree, that man.

2. The Adjective Demonstrative *ce* may be strengthened by the adverb *ci* (a shorter form of *ici*, from the Latin *ecce hic*), or by the adverb *là* (from the Latin *illac*), joined with a hyphen, as an enclitic, to the noun which *ce* qualifies :

Cet homme-ci, ce garçon-là, this man (here), that boy (there).

3. The Adjective Demonstrative *ce* has a limiting power, similar to the definite article, but more emphatic, and agrees with its noun in gender and number :

N'êtes vous plus cet Ulysse qui, &c. Are you no longer *the* Ulysses who (the same who).

Je donne ces poires à cette fille-ci. I am giving these pears to this girl.

Montrez-le-moi, ce mortel privilégié. Show him to me, this privileged mortal.

120. The Disjunctive (or Substantive) Demonstrative Pronoun, *celui*, is from the Latin *ecce ille*, through the Old French *icelui*, &c. ; it is declined and used as follows :

1. The Demonstrative Celui.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Mas., &c.	(Neuter.)
Sing., all cases...	<i>celui</i> , that.	<i>celle</i> , that.	<i>celui-ci</i> , &c., this one.	<i>ce</i> <i>ceci</i> } this, <i>cela</i> } that, <i>ça</i> }
Plur., all cases...	<i>ceux</i> , those.	<i>celles</i> , those.	<i>ceux-ci</i> , &c., these.	

Note.—The Neuter *ce* is inserted here for convenience. See next Section.

2. *Celui* is rendered more definite by the adverb *ci*, or *là*, joined by a hyphen, as an enclitic, forming *celui-ci*, 'this one (here),' *ceux-ci*, 'these (here),' *celui-là*, 'that one (there),' *ceux-là*, 'those (there),' with the feminine forms, *celle-ci*, &c. These forms are often used adversatively, but may be used singly :

Ceux-ci n'ont que leur foi; ceux-là ont leur foi et leur génie.
The former have only their faith ; the latter their faith and their genius.

C'est celui-ci qui est le plus fidèle. It is this one who is most faithful.

3. The Substantive Demonstrative, *celui*, *celle*, 'this' or 'that,' is almost always followed by a partitive clause with *de*, or a relative clause with *que* or its equivalent ; when it refers to persons it may usually be translated by the English personal pronoun :

Ces livres sont ceux que je préfère.

These books are the ones I prefer.

J'ai ton chapeau et celui de Guillaume.

I have your hat and that of William.

Je suis celui qui suis. I am the one who is (that I am).

J'ai joint à ma lettre celle écrite par le prince.

I have added to my letter the one written by the prince.

Dans des circonstances comme celles actuelles (Thiers.)

In circumstances like the actual ones.

4. The Substantive Demonstrative *celui* may be used absolutely, that is, not referring to any expressed noun, of persons only :

Heureux celui qui craint le Seigneur (Acad.).

Happy he who fears the Lord.

Celle qui a fait cela, a bien agi.

She who has done that has done well.

La voix de celle que l'on aime, the voice of her whom one loves.

121. The Neuter Ce.—The neuter pronoun **ce** is of different origin from the masculine adjective pronoun **ce**, though of the same form, being derived from the Latin *ecce hoc*. It elides its vowel before the vowel **e**, as in **c'est**, **c'était**, and also rarely before **a** and **o**, as in **ç'a été**, **ç'ont été** (Acad.). It is used as follows :

1. The neuter **ce** is joined to the adverb **ci** and **là**, without a hyphen, forming the pronouns **ceci** and **cela**, which may be used either adversatively or separately. **Cela** is often shortened in colloquial language into **ça** :

Ceci est soie, cela est laine. This is silk, that is wool.

Ceci n'est pas un jeu d'enfans. This is not child's play.

Qu'est-ce que ça ? What's that ?

Cela me plait beaucoup. That pleases me much.

Note.—**Ceci** and **cela** are not used of persons except contemptuously :

J'ai vu cela. I saw that fellow.

2. The neuter **ce** takes a plural verb when the logical subject is plural :

Ce sont nos méthodes, &c., it is our methods, &c.

Ce furent les Phéniciens, it was the Phenicians.

3. The neuter **ce** is chiefly used as the grammatical subject of the verb 'to be,' the logical subject being expressed elsewhere ; in questions, coming after its verb, it may be followed by **ci** or **là** without the hyphen (not enclitic) :

C'est moi, c'était lui. It is I, it was he.

La foi c'est l'héroïsme. Faith is heroism.

Qu'est-ce là que je vois ? What is that which I see ?

Quelles gens sont-ce là ? What people are those ?

Note.—The Academy, however, joins **ci** and **là** with a hyphen in such cases : **Qu'est-ce-ci ? Qu'est-ce-là ?** &c.

4. The neuter **ce** may be followed by a relative clause ; in this case **ce qui** is equivalent to the English 'that which' :

Ce qui m'étonne, c'est de le voir ici.

That which surprises me is to see him here.

Je sais ce que vous êtes, et ce qu'ils sont (Acad.).

I know what you are, and what they are.

5. The neuter **ce** is sometimes used without any relative clause, and in the objective case, especially in such phrases as **sur ce**, 'upon that ;' **quant à ce**, 'as to that ;' **pour ce**, 'as for that ;' **en vertu de ce**, 'in virtue of,' &c.

6. When **c'est** is followed by a relative clause, the verb 'to be' is sometimes omitted from the latter :

C'est une charmante chose, qu'une femme (est). It is a charming thing which a woman is (a woman is a charming thing).

C'est beaucoup que de savoir commander (est). It is a great thing which to know how to command is (to know how to command).

Note.—From this arise elliptical expressions without the use of **ce** :

L'aimable enfant que celui-là (est).

The amiable child that this one is (what an amiable).

This is frequent in questions :

Qu'est-ce que ceci (est) ? What is this ?

7. **C'est** is sometimes used with **de**, like the Latin *sum* with the genitive ; and with **à**, similarly, to signify possession :

C'est d'un orateur, it is the part of an orator.

C'est à vous à parler, it is your turn to speak.

C'est à moi, it is my property.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

122. The **Conjunctive (or Adjective) Interrogative Pronoun quel**, is derived from the Latin *qualis*, and is declined and used as follows :

1. The Interrogative **Quel**.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Sing., all Cases....	quel , what, which ?	quelle , what, which ?
Plural, all Cases...	quels , what, which ?	quelles , what, which ?

2. The interrogative **quel** is generally used adjectively, agreeing with its noun in gender and number :

Quel heure est-il ? quel temps fait-il ?
 What time is it ? what is the weather ?

Also in exclamations :

Quel air ! quelle disgrace ! What an air ! what a disgrace !

3. The interrogative **quel** is often separated from its noun, and used as subject of the verb :

Quelle est votre intention ? What is your intention ?
Quel est son âge ? What is his (or her) age ?

Note.—**Quel** is sometimes used for the disjunctive pronoun **lequel**, for which use see Sec. 124, 3.

123. The Disjunctive (or Substantive) Interrogative Pronoun, qui, derived from the Latin *quis*, is declined and used as follows :

1. The interrogative **qui**, 'who,' has the same form in the feminine and in the plural, but has also two neuter forms, **que**, **quoi**, 'what.'

2. The interrogative **qui** is used only of persons or personifications, and nearly always in the singular number :

À qui pensez-vous parler ? To whom do you think of speaking ?
Qui sont ces gens en robe ? Who are those in robes ?
Qui demandez-vous ? Whom do you ask for ?

3. The interrogative **qui** is sometimes used indefinitely for 'some—others,' &c. :

Nos gens s'en vont, qui deçà, qui delà.
 Our people are going away, some here, some there.

4. The neuter interrogative, **que**, 'what,' is chiefly used with the verb 'to be,' is never governed by a preposition, and elides its final letter before a vowel (which **qui** never does) :

Qu'est-ce que j'entends ? What do I hear ?

Qu'attendez-vous ? What are you waiting for ?

5. The neuter interrogative, **quoi**, 'what,' is used after prepositions, in exclamations, or when, as object of the verb, it is placed immediately after the verb :

De quoi parle-t-on ? Of what are they talking ?

Quoi, vous êtes mariés ! What ! you married !

Je ne sais quoi. I don't know what.

À quoi pensez-vous ? What are you thinking of ?

Note.—**Que** is used, however, in some exclamations to express quantity or quality, like the English 'how ;' and also to express cause or reason, in place of **à quoi**, **de quoi** :

Que Dieu est puissant ! How powerful God is !

Qu'il fait beau temps ! What fine weather !

Que sert la vigilance ? Of what use is vigilance ?

124. The Interrogative **Lequel**, 'which,' is formed by prefixing the definite article to the interrogative **quel**, both parts being declined, making the forms—**lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**. It is further combined with the prepositions **de** and **à**, giving the forms **duquel**, **auquel**, **auxquels**, **auxquelles**. Its use is as follows :

1. The interrogative **lequel**, 'which one,' is used substantively, of persons as well as things, and referring to some noun expressed, with which it agrees in number and gender :

Lequel de ces chapeaux voulez-vous ?

Which of these hats do you wish ?

Voici deux routes ; laquelle prendrez-vous ?

Here are two roads ; which one will you take ?

Auquel de ces messieurs desirez-vous parler ?

To which of these gentlemen do you wish to speak ?

2. The interrogative **lequel** may refer to an infinitive or a clause, in which case it is really neuter :

Lequel vaut mieux, de cultiver un art funeste ou de le rendre utile ? (Rousseau). Which is worth the most, to-cultivate an injurious art, or to make it useful ?

3. The interrogative **lequel** is sometimes displaced by **quel** :

Quel est celui de nos deux qui rêve ? (V. Hugo.)

Which one of us two is it that is dreaming ?

125. Interrogative Phrases.—Some peculiar forms of questions may need explanation :—

1. Questions often contain a relative clause in which the verb **est** is omitted, as explained in Sec. 121, 6 :

Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça (est) ? What's that ?

(What is it that it is that that [is] ?)

Qu'est-ce que la vie ? What is life ?

2. Other pleonastic forms :

Qu'est-ce qui vous fait mal ? What hurts you ?

Qui est-ce qui vous fait mal ? Who hurts you ?

Qui est-ce que vous demandez ? Whom do you want ?

N'est-ce pas que nous irons ? Shall we not go ?

3. An answer to a question must be either **oui**, 'yes,' **non**, 'no,' or an exclamation, or a complete sentence. Such answers as 'I will,' 'I do,' &c., are inadmissible :

Est-ce Jean ? Oui, or, oui, c'est lui. Is that John ? Yes, it is.

Sont-ce vos frères ? Oui, ce sont eux.

Are those your brothers ? Yes, it is.

Est-ce votre désir ? Oui, ce l'est. Is it your desire ? Yes.

Sont-ce vos habits ? Ce ne les sont pas.

Are they your clothes ? They are not.

Elle chante bien, n'est-ce pas ? She sings well, don't she ?

4. Antithetical questions are as follows :

Qui de vous ou de moi ? Which of us, you or I ?

Qui est le plus haut de toi ou d'Émile ?

Which is the taller, you or Emile ?

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

126. Adjective and Substantive Relatives.—Relative pronouns, like the other sorts of pronouns, may be divided into two classes. The adjective, or ordinary, relatives are **qui** and **lequel**. The only substantive relative is **qui**. They are declined like the corresponding interrogative pronouns, and are used as follows :—

127. The Ordinary Relative Qui, 'who,' 'which,' 'that,' refers to both persons and things, and takes the form **que** when used as the direct object (accusative case) :

Le chapeau que j'ai acheté, the hat which I bought.

1. After prepositions **qui** is used referring to persons, and usually **lequel**, sometimes **quoi**, and sometimes **qui**, referring to things :

C'est vous, digne Français, à qui je viens parler.

It is you, worthy Frenchman, to whom I come to speak.

La gloire, à laquelle les héros sacrifient.

The glory to which heroes sacrifice.

Ce sont choses à quoi vous ne prenez pas garde (Academy).

These are things of which you do not take care.

La main par qui Dieu m'a frappé (Voltaire).

The hand with which God struck me down.

Deux pivots sur qui roule notre vie (La Fontaine).

Two pivots upon which our life revolves.

2. Relative clauses with **qui** are often used where the English has a participial adjective :

L'homme qui rit, the laughing man.

L'enfant qui pleure, the crying child.

3. The form **que** occurs as the subject (nominative case), only when used predicatively ; it is then really neuter :

Je sais ce que vous êtes et ce qu'ils sont (Academy).

I know what you are and what they are.

Voilà ce que c'est, behold what it is.

4. The demonstratives **celui** and **ce** are never followed by **lequel**, always by **qui** :

Ce que j'ai promis, that which I have promised.

Ce qui est beau, that which is beautiful.

128. The Relative *Lequel*, 'which,' 'who,' 'that,' is used for emphasis (being the longer form), or for greater definiteness, or to avoid ambiguity, and especially with prepositions, and agrees with its antecedent in gender and number :

Son anneau, lequel il tenait fort cher, his ring, which he held very dear.

La sœur de mon père, laquelle demeure à Paris, my father's sister, who lives at Paris.

Un homme s'est levé au milieu de l'assemblée, lequel a parlé d'un manière extravagant. A man arose in the midst of the assembly, who (the man, not the assembly) spoke in an extravagant manner.

Le chien auquel, le canne avec laquelle, the dog to which, the cane with which.

129. The Substantive Relative is the Relative without antecedent, or containing the antecedent within itself, like the English 'whoever,' or 'what;' it refers both to persons and things :—

1. The Substantive Relative Pronoun referring to persons is *qui* in all cases :

Qui casse les verres, les paie. Whoever breaks the glasses pays for them.

Sauve qui peut. Save whoever can.

Vous trouverez à qui parler. You will find some one to speak to.

2. The Substantive Relative referring to things is *qui* in the nominative, and *quoi* in the direct object (accusative), or after prepositions :

Voilà qui est beau, behold what is fine (how fine this is).

Nous avons de quoi vivre. We have something to live upon.

C'est ce à quoi je ne pensais pas. It is what (something which) I was not expecting.

Je ne sais quoi dire. I don't know what to say.

ADVERBS USED AS PRONOUNS.

130. The Relative Dont.—The Adverb *dont*, from the Latin *de unde*, has lost all its adverbial power, and is used only in place of the relative pronoun with the preposition *de*, *duquel*, *desquels*, &c. (genitive case), like the English ‘whereof,’ ‘whence,’ &c.:

des Le Français dont le frère est mort, the Frenchman whose brother is dead.

L’esprit retourne au ciel, dont il est descendu (Racine). The soul returns to heaven, whence it descended.

Voilà ce dont il s’agit. This is what is in question.

Note.—*Dont* must follow its antecedent immediately. If any limitation of the antecedent prevents this, *duquel*, &c., is used :

L’ami à la probité duquel je me suis fié, the friend in whose honesty I have confided.

131. The Relative Où.—The adverb *où*, ‘where,’ from the Latin *ubi*, often takes the place of the relative pronoun with the preposition *à*,—*auquel*, *auxquels* (dative case), like the English ‘whereunto,’ ‘wherein,’ &c.:

Le bonheur où j’aspire, the happiness to which I aspire.

La misère où ils sont, the misery in which they are.

C’est un mal où mes amis ne peuvent porter de remède (Montesquieu). It is an evil to which my friends can bring no remedy.

Note.—*D’où* and *par où* are occasionally found, replacing *de quoi*, *par lequel*, &c.:

Un procès d’où dépend ma fortune, a suit on which my fortune depends.

Les points par où (Rousseau). D’où vient que vous faites cela ? (Academy).

132. The Pronoun En.—The Adverb *en*, from the Latin *inde*, is only used as a pronoun, and is usually considered as such. It is used in the place of a demonstrative or personal pronoun accompanied by the preposition *de* (genitive case), and may refer to persons as well as things :

1. The pronoun *en* often takes the place of an ordinary possessive case :

Quand on est dans un pays, il faut en suivre l’usage.

When one is in a country, it is necessary to follow its customs.

Note.—A possessive pronoun may be used in this case :

La patience est amère, mais son fruit est doux (Rousseau). *Patience is bitter, but its fruit is sweet.*

2. The pronoun **en** often takes the place of a partitive expression, and has the force of ‘some’ or ‘any,’ &c. :

A-t-il des protecteurs ? Il en a de très puissants. *Has he any protectors ? He has some very powerful ones.*

Donnez-lui en. *Give him some.*

3. The pronoun (or adverb) **en** may take the place of a possessive pronoun, in which case the article is supplied :

Sentir sa fatigue, or en sentir la fatigue, *to feel the fatigue of it.*

Il en sait, il en voit, la haine opiniâtre.

He knows, he sees, his stubborn hate.

Remark.—**En** replaces a pronoun with **de**, without regard to what preposition (or if none) is required in English :

Je vous en remercie. *I thank you for it.*

Il faut en profiter. *We must profit by it.*

4. The pronoun **en** is sometimes used in pleonastic expressions, where it is really redundant :

De ces trois unités, il n’y en a qu’une d’importante (De Staël).

Of these three unities there is only one (of them) important.

En est-il un seul parmi vous qui consentit ? (Acad.).

Is there a single one (of you) among you who would consent ?

5. The pronoun **en** is used in some expressions in which it retains an adverbial force, in part or entirely :

S’en aller, *to go away (take one’s self from it).*

S’en venir, *to come away (to bring one’s self from it).*

O’en est fait, *it is all over (it is done of it), &c., &c.*

133. The Pronoun Y.—The adverb **y**, from the Latin *ibi*, is used and usually considered as a pronoun, but generally retains some reference to place. It is used in place of a demonstrative or personal pronoun accompanied by the preposition **à** (dative case), and means ‘to it,’ ‘at it,’ ‘into it,’ ‘there,’ &c.:

Si vous allez au théâtre, je veux y aller.

If you go to the theatre, I wish to go there (to it).

C'est un homme équivoque, ne vous y fiez pas (Acad.).

He is a deceitful man, do not trust him (to him).

1. The pronoun **y** replaces a pronoun used with the preposition **à** without regard to what preposition (or if none) is used in English :

Pensez-vous à moi? Oui, j'y pense. Are you thinking about me? Yes, I am thinking of you.

Si je promets, comptez-y. If I promise, depend upon it.

2. When **y** and **en** come together, **y** precedes :

Je vous y en porterai. I will bring you some of it there.

3. **Y** is used in some expressions in which it retains the force of an adverb :

Il y a, there is (it has there, has in it) .

Il y va de, it is at stake (it tends thither, goes there, of).

Il y va de ma gloire; il faut que je me venge. It concerns my glory (it is at stake); I must be revenged.

4. The adverb **y** is sometimes used where better usage places **là** :

Conduisez-y-moi, or, conduisez moi là, lead me thither.

Je vous y en porterai, or, Je vous en porterai là. I will take you some there.

Apporte-s-y quelque-chose, or, apporte quelque-chose là. Bring something there.

Note.—S is rarely inserted in such cases, to avoid the hiatus.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

134. A small number of Pronouns are called Indefinite, because used in an unlimited way, without referring to any particular word, like the English 'none,' 'some,' 'all,' 'each,' &c.

Their use is in general the same as in English. A few require more special attention.

135. The Pronoun On is derived from the Latin 'homo;' it means 'one,' 'people,' 'they,' &c.; it refers only to persons; it is always the subject of the verb, and is always singular:

Ici on parle Français. Here they speak French.

A-t-on reçu des lettres? Have letters been received?

Quand on est chrétien, when one is a Christian.

1. **On** is preceded by **l'** after a vowel, or at the beginning of a sentence:

Si l'on arrache la jambe d'une mouche, if one tears off the leg of a fly.

L'on hait avec excès lorsque l'on hait un frère (Racine). One hates with excess when one hates a brother.

Note.—This **l'** was originally the definite article, but has lost all force except as a euphonic letter.

Exception.—**L'** is not inserted when the next word begins with **l**, to avoid the alliteration:

Si on le voit (not **si l'on le voit**), if it is seen.

2. The verb after **on** may take a predicate noun in the plural:

Quand on est jolies, mesdames, comme vous, when people are pretty, like you, ladies.

3. **On** is sometimes used for 'I' or 'we':

On vous l'a répété cent fois.

I have repeated it to you a hundred times.

136. The Pronoun Personne is from the Latin *persona*; it means 'anybody,' or, with ellipsis of the negative, 'nobody;' and is chiefly used in negative or interrogative sentences. (**Personne** is also a noun, meaning 'person.')

1. **Personne** with a negative may be translated by 'nobody':

Personne n'est plus jolie. Nobody is prettier.

Je ne connais personne d'aussi heureux que cette femme (Acad.). I know nobody so happy as that woman.

2. **Personne** without a negative means 'anybody':

Si jamais personne est assez hardi pour l'entreprendre, il réussira (Acad.). If ever anybody is bold enough to undertake it, he will succeed.

Je doute que personne ait mieux peint la nature.

I doubt whether any one has painted nature better.

Personne a-t-il jamais? has anybody ever?

3. **Personne**, in the answer to a question, means 'nobody,' the negative and the verb being understood:

Y a-t-il quelqu'un ici? Personne.

Is there anybody here? Nobody.

137. The Pronoun Rien is derived from the Latin *rem*; it means 'anything,' and is chiefly used in negative sentences.

1. **Rien** with a negative may be translated 'nothing':

Je ne dis rien. I say nothing.

Il vaut mieux ne rien faire que de faire des riens. It is better to do nothing than to do nothings (trifles.)

2. **Rien** without a negative means 'anything':

Qui vous reproche rien? Who reproaches you with anything?

Y a-t-il rien de si beau? Is there anything so fine?

3. **Rien** is sometimes, with an ellipsis of the negative, equivalent to 'nothing':

Dieu a créé le monde de rien.

God created the world out of nothing.

Qu'avez-vous? Rien.

What's the matter with you? Nothing.

138. The Pronoun Aucun is used both adjectively and substantively; it has a feminine form, **aucune**, and plural forms, **aucuns** and **aucunes**; it is derived from the Latin *aliqui unus*; it means 'any one,' 'some,' and, with the negative, 'none,' 'no one':

1. **Aucun** used substantively:

Aucun n'est prophète chez soi. No one is a prophet at home.

On doit ne se rendre suspect à aucun. One ought not to make himself suspected by any one.

2. **Aucun** used adjectively:

On ne garda plus aucunes mesures. They no longer kept any bounds.

Quiconque cherche la vérité, ne doit être d'aucun pays (Voltaire). Whoever seeks for the truth, should be of no country.

139. The Pronoun **Tout**, from the Latin *totus*, is also declined—fem. **toute**, plural **tous, toutes**; it is used both substantively and adjectively, and means 'all,' 'every,' 'the whole,' 'entirely,' &c.

1. **Tout**, in the sense of 'all,' denoting quantity, or 'the whole,' may be used either attributively or predicatively:

Attributively: **À toute force**, with his whole force.

Tout sa famille, his whole family.

Tout le peuple, the whole people.

Pendant tout ce temps, during that whole time.

Predicatively: **Elles furent toutes surprises de le voir.** They were entirely surprised to see him.

Laissez-moi toute à mon désespoir. Leave me entirely to my despair.

2. **Tout**, in the sense of 'all,' referring to number, may be used either substantively or adjectively:

Substantively: **La mort nous sépare de tout** (Bossuet). Death separates us from all things.

Se dévouer pour le salut de tous (Acad.). To devote one's self for the salvation of all.

Tout ce qui nous fait sentir notre méprise, everything which makes us feel our error.

Adjectively: **Tous les regards et tous les cœurs**, all looks (eyes) and all hearts.

Tous les jours, every day. **Tous deux**, both (all two). **Tous les deux**, both.

3. **Tout**, in the sense of 'every,' is usually singular, and agrees in gender with its noun:

Tout homme est sujet à la mort. Every man is subject to death.

En toute occasion, on every occasion.

À toute heure, at all hours.

À tous moments (Molière), every moment.

De tous côtés (Boileau), on every side.

140. The Pronoun *Tel*, from the Latin *talis*, has a feminine, *telle*, and a plural, *tels, telles*; it means 'such,' and is used as follows:

1. *Tel* may agree with a noun, to denote either kind or degree, in a demonstrative way:

Il tient à peu près tel discours. He held very nearly such language (as the following).

Une telle conduite vous fait honneur (Acad.). Such conduct (as that described) does you honor.

Il est tel que son père. He is just like his father.

Note 1.—*Tel*—*tel* may be used as correlatives, like the Latin *talis*—*qualis*:

Tel maître, tel valet, as the master, so the servant.

Telle vie, telle fin, as the life is, so its end will be.

Note 2.—The phrase *tel quel* is in colloquial use, meaning 'just as it was,' &c.:

Je vous rends votre argent tellé quelle.

I return your money intact (all right).

Note 3.—*Tel* sometimes means 'such and such,' or 'so and so,' or 'such a one,' &c.:

Dans telle ville, in a certain city.

À telle époque, at such a time.

Avoir telle ou telle qualité, to have such or such a quality.

2. *Tel* may be used, either adjectively or substantively, referring to indefinite individuals:

Tel homme recherche ce que tel autre méprise (Acad.).

One man seeks what another scorns.

Tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleura (Racine).

Who laughs Friday will weep Sunday.

141. The Pronoun *Même* is from the Latin *semet ipsisimus* (through *met ipsimus* and the Old French *meisme mesme*), and has a plural, *mêmes*. It means 'self,' 'same,' &c., and is used as follows:

1. *Même* is joined as an enclitic with the hyphen to the disjunctive personal pronouns, forming *moi-même, toi-*

même, &c. (See Sec. 108.) In a similar way it is added to abstract nouns, making a kind of personification :

Cet homme est la valeur même.
That man is valor itself.

Note.—**Même** may agree with a noun, and have the meaning of 'very' or 'even,' &c.:

Les rochers mêmes, the very rocks.
Les dieux mêmes, the gods themselves.

In this sense it is sometimes used adverbially :

Les dieux même, even the gods.

2. **Même** with the definite article means 'the same' :

C'est le même homme.
It is the same man.
Cette femme est toujours la même.
That woman is always the same.

Note.—Sometimes it has the same force without the article :

Voici les frères Martin : même taille, même figure, même habitudes de corps. See the Martin brothers : the same height, same face, same motions.

142. The **Pronoun Nul**, from the Latin *nullus*, has a feminine form, *nulle*, and a plural *nuls, nulles*. It is used both substantively and adjectively, and means 'none,' 'no one' :

1. **Nul** used substantively is almost always found in the masculine singular, and is followed by the negative **ne** :

Nul n'est exempt de mourir.
None is exempt from death.
À nul l'ambition n'est, je crois, étrangère.
To none is ambition, I suppose, a stranger.

This double negative, **nul ne**, it will be seen, is equivalent to a simple negative.

Note.—The plural is sometimes used in this way :

Nulles des expressions (Rousseau), none of the expressions.

2. **Nul** may be used adjectively, agreeing with its noun:

Nulle paix pour l'impie (Racine).

No peace for the wicked.

Nuls malheurs doivent abattre l'homme (Mirabeau).

No misfortunes ought to overcome man.

143. The **Pronoun Autre**, from the Latin *alter*, is of common gender, and has a plural, **autres**; it means 'other,' 'different':

1. **Autre** has very often the definite article, and then has often **l'un** for a correlative:

L'un et l'autre consul, both consuls.

Ils se déchirent les uns les autres (Fénelon). They tore one another (more than one on each side).

Les uns par curiosité, les autres par consideration, some through curiosity, some through sympathy.

Note.—**Autre** may also have the indefinite article, in the sense of 'an other of two':

Un autre Alexandre, another Alexander.

Un autre moi-même, or, **une autre moi-même**, &c., an other self (*alter ego*), &c.

2. **Autre** is often used, generally, without the definite article, in the sense of 'a different one,' Latin *alius*:

Quelque autre vous le dira mieux que moi. Some other will tell it you better than I.

Son fils et deux autres personnes, his (or her) son and two other persons.

L'autre jour, the other day, recently.

C'est une autre affaire. That is a different matter.

Autres temps, autres mœurs. Different times, other manners.

So, like the Latin *aliud*—*aliud*:

Autre est promettre, autre est donner, one thing to promise, another to give.

CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

144. Conjugation.—Verbs are conjugated in French, as in English, partly by terminations and partly by means of auxiliary verbs. The verbs **avoir**, ‘to have,’ and **être**, ‘to be,’ are both used as auxiliaries, and they are therefore given first, in full.

145. The Verb Avoir (Latin habere).

INDICATIVE MODE.

Simple Tenses.		Compound Tenses.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. J'ai	I have.	J'ai eu	I have had.
2. Tu as	thou hast.	Tu as eu	thou hast had.
3. Il a	he has.	Il a eu	he has had.
Plur. 1. Nous avons	we have.	Nous avons eu	we have had.
2. Vous avez	you have.	Vous avez eu	you have had.
3. Ils ont	they have.	Ils ont eu	they have had.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. J'avais	I had.	J'avais eu	I had had.
2. Tu avais	thou hadst.	Tu avais eu	thou hadst had.
3. Il avait	he had.	Il avait eu	he had had.
Plur. 1. Nous avions	we had.	Nous avions eu	we had had.
2. Vous aviez	you had.	Vous aviez eu	you had had.
3. Ils avaient	they had.	Ils avaient eu	they had had.
<i>Preterite.</i>		<i>Past Preterite.</i>	
Sing. 1. J'eus	I had.	J'eus eu	I had had.
2. Tu eus	thou hadst.	Tu eus eu	thou hadst had.
3. Il eut	he had.	Il eut eu	he had had.
Plur. 1. Nous eûmes	we had.	Nous eûmes eu	we had had.
2. Vous eûtes	you had.	Vous eûtes eu	you had had.
3. Ils eurent	they had.	Ils eurent eu	they had had.
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. aurai	shall have.	aurai eu	shall have had.
2. auras	wilt have.	auras eu	wilt have had.
3. aura	will have.	aura eu	will have had.
Plur. 1. aurons	shall have.	aurons eu	shall have had.
2. aurez	will have.	aurez eu	will have had.
3. auront	will have.	auront eu	will have had.

Conditional Present.

Sing. 1.	aurais	should have.
2.	aurais	wouldst have.
3.	aurait	would have.
Plur. 1.	aurions	should have.
2.	auriez	would have.
3.	auraient	would have.

Conditional Past.

aurais eu	should have had.
aurais eu	would have had.
aurait eu	would have had.
aurions eu	should have had.
auriez eu	would have had.
auraient eu	would have had.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.*

Present.

Sing. 1.	aie	(may) have.
2.	aies	(mayst) have.
3.	aie	(may) have.
Plur. 1.	ayons	(may) have.
2.	ayez	(may) have.
3.	aient	(may) have.

Perfect.

aie eu	(may) have had.
aies eu	(mayst) have had.
aie eu	(may) have had.
ayons eu	(may) have had.
ayez eu	(may) have had.
aient eu	(may) have had.

Preterite.

Sing. 1.	eusse	(might) have.
2.	eusses	(mightst) have.
3.	eût	(might) have.
Plur. 1.	eussions	(might) have.
2.	eussiez	(might) have.
3.	eussent	(might) have.

Pluperfect.

eusse eu	(might) have had.
eusses eu	(mightst) have had.
eusses eu	(might) have had.
eussions eu	(might) have had.
eussiez eu	(might) have had.
eussent eu	(might) have had.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2.	aie tu	have thou.	Pl. 2.	ayez vous	have ye.
3.	qu'il aie	let him have.	3.	qu'ils aient	let them have.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.

avoir	to have.
-------	----------

Perfect.

avoir eu	to have had.
----------	--------------

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

ayant	having.
-------	---------

Compound

Perfect.

eu	had.
----	------

Perfect.

ayant eu	having had.
----------	-------------

* NOTE.—The meaning of the Subjunctive depends on the connection in which it stands in the sentence, and 'might' and 'may' are only inserted for convenience. The Subjunctive is *not* usually translated by the so-called "Potential."



Note.—The negative, interrogative, and negative-interrogative forms of *avoir* are not given here. The mode of their formation will be found described in Secs. 160 and 161.

146. The Verb Être (late Latin *essere*) :

INDICATIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. suis	am.	ai été	have been.
2. es	art.	as été	hast been.
3. est	is.	a été	has been.
Plur. 1. sommes	are.	avons été	have been.
2. êtes	are.	avez été	have been.
3. sont	are.	ont été	have been.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. étais	was.	avais été	had been.
2. étais	wast.	avais été	hadst been.
3. était	was.	avait été	had been.
Plur. 1. étions	were.	avions été	had been.
2. étiez	were.	aviez été	had been.
3. étaient	were.	avaient été	had been.
<i>Preterite.</i>		<i>Past Preterite.</i>	
Sing. 1. fus	was.	eus été	had been.
2. fus	wast.	eus été	hadst been.
3. fut	was.	eut été	had been.
Plur. 1. fûmes	were.	eûmes été	had been.
2. fûtes	were.	eûtes été	had been.
3. furent	were.	eurent été	had been.
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. serais	shall be.	aurai été	shall have been.
2. seras	wilt be.	auras été	wilt have been.
3. sera	will be.	aura été	will have been.
Plur. 1. serons	shall be.	aurons été	shall have been.
2. serez	will be.	aurez été	will have been.
3. seront	will be.	auront été	will have been.
<i>Conditional Present.</i>		<i>Conditional Past.</i>	
Sing. 1. serais	should be.	aurais été	should have been.
2. serais	wouldst be.	aurais été	wouldst have been.
3. serait	would be.	aurait été	would have been.
Plur. 1. serions	should be.	aurions été	should have been.
2. seriez	would be.	auriez été	would have been.
3. seraient	would be.	auraient été	would have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1.	sois (may) be.	aie été	(may) have been.
2.	sois (mayst) be.	aies été	(mayst) have been.
3.	soit (may) be.	aie été	(may) have been.
Plur. 1.	soyons (may) be.	ayons été	(may) have been.
2.	soyez (may) be.	ayez été	(may) have been.
3.	soient (may) be.	aient été	(may) have been.
<i>Preterite.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Sing. 1.	fusse (might) be.	eusse été	(might) have been.
2.	fusses (mightst) be.	eusses été	(mightst) have been.
3.	fût (might) be.	eût été	(might) have been.
Plur. 1.	fussions (might) be.	eussions été	(might) have been.
2.	fussiez (might) be.	eussiez été	(might) have been.
3.	fussent (might) be.	eussent été	(might) have been.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2.	sois tu be thou.	Plur. 2.	soyez vous be ye.
3.	qu'il soit let him be.	3.	qu'ils soient let them be.

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
être	to be.	avoir été	to have been.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Compound.</i>	
étant	being.	été	been.	ayant été	having been.

147. Use of the Auxiliary Verbs.

1. **Avoir** is used as auxiliary with active verbs, with impersonal verbs, and with most intransitive verbs :

Je l'ai vu, I saw him.
Il a fallu, it was necessary.
Il a parlé, he has spoken.

2. **Être** is used as auxiliary with passive, reflexive, and reciprocal forms, and with some intransitive verbs :

Je suis aimé, I am loved.

Il s'est flatté, he flattered himself.

Je suis venu, **il est allé**, I have come, he is gone.

3. In general, those intransitive verbs which express an action of the subject take **avoir** as an auxiliary; those which express a state, resulting from the action, take **être** as an auxiliary :

J'ai couru, I ran, I have run.

Je suis venu, I am come (having come, I am here).

4. A few verbs may take either **avoir** or **être** as auxiliaries, frequently with a distinction of meaning, the former denoting action, the latter denoting resulting state :

J'ai resté un an. I stayed a year.

Qui lui soit resté, which remained to him.

La procession a passé. The procession has passed.

C'est passé en proverbe. It has passed into a proverb.

REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

148. **Three Conjugations.**—There are in French three regular conjugations of verbs, distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive, which in the first is **-er**, in the second **-ir**, and in the third **-re**. The first contains about nine tenths of all French verbs, the second about four hundred verbs, and the third about fifty.

Some verbs undergo euphonic changes of the stem, consequent upon the addition of the inflexional endings, and some may be said to be irregular. These peculiarities will be described in subsequent sections.

The simple tenses of the three regular conjugations are given in the next section. The compound tenses are formed exactly as in **avoir**, already given. The negative, interrogative, negative-interrogative, passive, and reflexive forms will follow.

Note.—Some grammarians make another conjugation out of a few peculiar verbs ending in **-oir**; there is also a class of verbs ending

in -ir, which differ somewhat from the more common form of the second conjugation. These might be erected into a fifth conjugation. Both these classes are described below.

149. Simple Tenses of Regular Verbs.

First Conjugation. Chanter, 'to sing.'	Second Conjugation. Finir, 'to finish.'	Third Conjugation. Vendre, 'to sell.'
-------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
' <i>I sing,</i> ' &c.	' <i>I finish,</i> ' &c.	' <i>I sell,</i> ' &c.
chante	finis	vends
chantes	finis	vends
chante	finit	vend
chantons	finissons	vendons
chantez	finissez	vendez
chantent	finissent	vendent
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
' <i>I was singing,</i> ' &c.	' <i>I was finishing,</i> ' &c.	' <i>I was selling,</i> ' &c.
chantais	finissais	vendais
chantais	finissais	vendais
chantait	finissait	vendait
chantions	finissions	vendions
chantiez	finissiez	vendiez
chantaient	finissaient	vendaient
PRETERITE.	PRETERITE.	PRETERITE.
' <i>I sang,</i> ' &c.	' <i>I finished,</i> ' &c.	' <i>I sold,</i> ' &c.
chantai	finis	vendis
chantas	finis	vendis
chanta	finit	vendit
chantâmes	finîmes	vendîmes
chantâtes	finîtes	vendîtes
chantèrent	finirent	vendirent

FUTURE. <i>'I shall sing,' &c.</i> chanterai chanteras chantera chanterons chanterez chanteront	FUTURE. <i>'I shall finish,' &c.</i> finirai finiras finira finirons finirez finiront	FUTURE. <i>'I shall sell,' &c.</i> vendrai vendras vendra vendrons vendrez vendront
CONDITIONAL PRES. <i>'I should sing,' &c.</i> chanterais chanterais chanterait chanterions chanteriez chanteraient	CONDITIONAL PRES. <i>'I should finish,' &c.</i> finirais finirais finirait finirions finiriez finiraient	CONDITIONAL PRES. <i>'I should sell,' &c.</i> vendrais vendrais vendrait vendrions vendriez vendraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT. chante chantes chante chantions chantiez chantent	PRESENT. finisse finisses finisse finissions finissiez finissent	PRESENT. vende vendes vende vendions vendiez vendent
PRETERITE. <i>R.</i> chantasse chantasses chantât chantassions chantassiez chantassent	PRETERITE. finisse finisses finît finissions finissiez finissent	PRETERITE. vendisse vendisses vendît vendissions vendissiez vendissent

IMPERATIVE MODE.

chante chantons chantez	finis finissons finissez	vends vendons vendez
-------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------

INFINITIVE MODE.

chanter	finir	vendre
---------	-------	--------

PARTICIPLES.

chantant	finissant	vendant
chanté	fini	vendu

150. Remarks on the Regular Verb.

1. In the second conjugation the syllable **-iss-**, inserted between the stem and the ending, in most verbs, in the Present, Imperfect, Imperative, and Present Participle, is derived from the Latin **-isc-** and **-esc-** in “Inchoative” verbs:—**palir**, Lat. *palleco*; **gémir**, Lat. *ingemisco*; **noircir**, Lat. *nigresco*; **fleurir**, Lat. *floresco*. But some verbs follow this analogy and insert the **-iss-** which are not derived from inchoative verbs:—**périr**, **punir**, **finir**, **ravir**, **régir**.

A large class of verbs of the second conjugation do not insert this syllable **-iss-**; they will be described in Sec. 152.

2. The circumflex accent which will be noticed in the Preterite Indicative and the Imperfect Subjunctive, is a mark of the dropping out of an **s** in the old French form, which is also shortened from the Latin:—**chantâtes**, Old French **chantastes**, Latin *cantavistis*; **aimâmes**, Old French **aimasmes**, Latin *amavimus*. So also in the verb **être**, Latin *esse*, Late Latin *essere*, Old French **être**; **êtes**, Latin *estis*, &c.

3. The grave accent in the Preterite Third Person Plural of the first conjugation, is the accent usually written over the vowel **e** in French, when followed by a final **e** mute after a single consonant; as in **fidèle**, **rivière** (Latin *riparia*), and a large class of words derived from Latin words

ending in *-arius*, *-aria*, &c., or following the analogy of those which are so derived.

PECULIARITIES OF ORTHOGRAPHY,

In Verbs otherwise regular.

151. First Conjugation.

1. Verbs which have *e* or *é* in the last syllable of the stem, strengthen this syllable when followed by *e* mute in the ending, by taking the grave accent, or by doubling the final consonant of the stem if it is *l* or *t*:

Mener—*mène*, *mènes*, *mènent*, *mènerai*, *mèneras*, *mènera*, *mènerais*.

Céder—*cède*, *cèdes*, *cèdent*.

Appeler—*appelle*, *appelles*, *appellent*, &c.

Jeter—*jette*, *jettes*, *jettent*, *jetterai*, *jetterais*, &c.

Exceptions.—Verbs ending in *-éger* and *-éer* retain the acute accent in the stem :

Protéger—*protége*, *protégent*, *protégerai*, &c.

Créer—*créé*, *créent*, *créerai*, *créerais*, &c.

Note 1.—Some verbs whose stems end in *l* or *t* take the grave accent instead of doubling the *l* or *t*, viz. :

Celer—*cèle*, *cèlent*, *cèlerai*, &c.

Acheter—*achète*, *achètent*, *achèterai*, &c., and also *ecarteler*, *geler*, *harceler*, and *décoller*.

Note 2.—Verbs which have *é* in the last syllable of the stem do not change this to *è* in the Future:—*Céder*—*cède*, *cèdent*, &c., as above, but *céderai*, *céderais*, &c. (the Conditional being a Future form).

2. Verbs ending in *-ger* and *-cer* preserve the soft sound of the *g* and the *c* before *a* or *o* of the ending, by inserting an *e* after the *g* and adding a cedilla to the *c* :

Manger—*mangeons*, *mangeai*, *mangeâmes*, *mangèrent*.

Placer—*plaçons*, *plaçais*, *placions*.

3. Verbs ending in *-ayer*, *-oyer*, *-uyer*, *-ier*, *-uer* often

elide *e* mute in the future forms, denoting its absence by the circumflex accent :

Payer—paierai ; **Balayer**—balairai ; **Oublier**—oublierai, &c.

4. Verbs ending in **-ayer**, **-oyer**, and **-uyer** change this *y* into *i* before *e* mute :

Payer—paie, paient, &c. ; payons, payez.

Employer—emploie, emploierai, &c.

Note.—Verbs in **-ayer** may retain the *y* :

Payer—paie or paye, paient or payent, &c.

5. In verbs ending in **-uer** some writers add a diæresis to the *i* of the ending when it follows the *u* and precedes another vowel :

Jouer—jouïons, jouïez.

Tuer—tuïons, tuïez, &c.

152. Second Conjugation.

1. Several verbs, called pure verbs, do not insert the syllable *iss* in the Present, Imperfect, and Participle, as in the regular form. They are mostly from the Latin fourth conjugation. They are :

Dormir (dormire) ‘sleep,’ **mentir** (mentiri) ‘lie,’ **sentir** (sentire) ‘feel,’ **partir** (partire) ‘set out,’ **sortir** (sortiri) ‘go out,’ **servir** (servire) ‘serve,’ **bouillir** (bullire) ‘boil,’ **saillir** (salire) ‘project,’ ‘sally,’ **vêtir** (vestire) ‘clothe,’ **fuir** (fugere) ‘flee,’ **cueillir** (colligere) ‘cull,’ **repentir** (pœnitere) ‘repent,’ and their compounds.

Excepting—**répartir**, **assortir**, **ressortir**, **asservir**, **investir**, **réussir**.

NOTE that **départir**, **repartir** follow the pure form, though other compounds of the same follow the inchoative.

Also, a few verbs otherwise irregular :

ouvrir (operire) ‘open,’ **couvrir** (cooperire) ‘cover,’ **offrir** (offere) ‘offer,’ **souffrir** (suffere) ‘suffer,’ and compounds.

2. Verbs of the above class whose stems end in **m**, **t**, or **v**, replace it by **s** in the first and second persons of the Indicative Present, and those in **m** or **v** replace it by **t** in the third person of the same tense :

Dormir—	Sentir—	Servir—
dors dormons	sens sentons	sers servons
dors dormez	sens sentez	sers servez
dort dorment	sent sentent	sert servent

Exception.—**V**êtir retains its t :

Vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.

3. Verbs of this class whose stems end in **ll**, **vr**, or **fr**, take **e** mute in the first and second persons of the Present Indicative and Subjunctive, like verbs of the first conjugation :

Cueillir—	Ouvrir—	Souffrir—
cueille cueillons	ouvre ouvrons	souffre souffrons
cueilles cueillez	ouvres ouvrez	souffres souffrez
cueille cueillent	ouvre ouvrent	souffre souffrent.

Exception.—**B**ouillir, 'to boil,' has in the present **bous**, **bous**, **bout**, **bouillons**, **bouillez**, **bouillent**.

4. **H**air drops the diæresis in the singular of the Present Indicative.

153. Third Conjugation.—This conjugation differs but little from the pure verbs of the second conjugation. It contains very few regular verbs, mostly from the third Latin conjugation.

1. Verbs ending in **-indre** insert a **g** before the **n**, when it is followed by a vowel of the ending:

Joindre, 'join,' joignons, joignant, &c. ; **c**raindre, 'fear,' craignons, &c.

2. Verbs ending in **-indre** also drop the **d** of the stem when it is not followed by **r** of the ending :

Craindre, **crains**, **crains**, **craint**, **craignons**, &c. ; **c**raindrai, &c.

3. Stems ending in **c** preserve the hardness of the **c**, before **e** and **i** of the ending, by changing it to **qu** :

Vaincre, **vainque**, Subj. Pres. ; **vainquis**, Pret. Indic., &c. ; **vaincrai**, Fut. Indic., &c.

Also, by analogy, the form **vainquons**, &c.

4. **Plaire**, 'please,' takes the circumflex accent upon **i** before **t**, after the analogy of verbs in **aître** :

Plaire, plaît, &c.

154. Verbs in -cevoir.—A few verbs ending in **-cevoir**, derived from the Latin compounds of **capere**, are irregular in part. The **c** of this ending takes the cedilla before **a**, **o**, and **u** :

Récevoir (recipere) 'receive' :

Pres. reçois	Fut. recevrai	Pret. reçus
reçois	recevras	reçus
reçoit	recevra	reçut
recevons	recevrons	reçûmes
recevez	recevrez	reçûtes
reçoivent	recevront	reçurent

Subj. Pres. reçoive, &c.

Imperf. reçusse

Part. Pres. recevant

Perfect. reçu.

Note.—**Devoir** follows the analogy of verbs in **-cevoir**: **Pres. dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent.** Participle Perf. **dû, &c.**

Remark.—Other verbs ending in **-oir** are conjugated for the most part like the pure verbs of the second conjugation, but have, in general, some irregularities. These few verbs in **-cevoir** are by some made a separate conjugation.

155. Irregular or Strong Verbs.—Some verbs not entirely regular are called "strong" because they strengthen the stem-syllable by changing its vowel, in the singular and in the third person of the plural of the Present Indicative:

Tenir , 'hold' —	Mourir , 'die' —	Savoir , 'know' —
tiens tenons	meurs mourons	sais savons
tiens tenez	meurs mourez	sais savez
tient tiennent	meurt meurent	sait savent.

Savoir has **savent**, regular form, in the third plural.

Note.—The verbs in **-cevoir**, described above, are also "strong"

verbs, but were placed by themselves as forming a class, and having some special peculiarities.

156. Table of Irregular Verbs.—At the end of this part of this book will be found a table containing a full description of all irregular, anomalous, or defective verbs, including those mentioned above. Hence verbs of this kind will not be further described at present. The above sections describe all that can advantageously be classified. The compound tenses and forms of the regular verb will now be given, in the succeeding sections.

157. Compound Tenses.—Active verbs form their compound tenses by combining their Perfect Participles with the simple tenses of the verb **avoir**, exactly as in the verbs **avoir** and **être**, already given in full. The following tabular view shows the manner of their formation.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PERFECT TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
J'ai		J'avais	
Tu as	chanté	Tu avais	chanté
Il a	fini	Il avait	fini
Nous avons	vendu	Nous avions	vendu.
&c.		&c.	
PRETERITE PAST.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
J'eus		J'aurai	
Tu eus	chanté	Tu auras	chanté
Il eut	fini	Il aura	fini
Nous eumes	vendu	Nous aurons	vendu.
&c.		&c.	

CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'aurais			
Tu aurais		chanté	
Il aurait		fini	
Nous aurions		vendu.	
&c.			

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PERFECT TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
(Que) j'aie	chanté	(Que) j'eusse	chanté
(Que) tu aies	fini	(Que) tu eusse	fini
(Qu') il aie	vendu	(Qu') il eût	vendu.
(Que) nous ayons		(Que) nous eûmes	
&c.			
INFINITIVE PERFECT.		COMPOUND PARTICIPLE.	
avoir	{ chanté fini vendu	ayant	{ chanté fini vendu.

Verbs conjugated with **être** as auxiliary form their compound tenses exactly like these, only substituting the simple tenses of **être** for those of **avoir**.

158. The Passive Voice.—The passive forms are conjugated with the verb **être**, the simple tenses of **être** being joined with the Perfect Participle of the active verb agreeing in gender and number with the subject. The following tenses of the verb **aimer**, 'love,' will serve as a model:

INDICATIVE MODE, PRESENT TENSE.

Je suis aimé or aimée, I am loved.

Tu es aimé or aimée, thou art loved.

Il est aimé or aimée, he is loved.

Nous sommes aimés or aimées, we are loved.

Vous êtes aimés or aimées or aimé or aimée, you are loved.

Ils or elles sont aimés or aimées, they are loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

J'ai été aimé or aimée, I have been loved.

&c.

Nous avons été aimés or aimées, we have been loved.

&c.

FUTURE TENSE.

Je serais aimé or aimée, I shall be loved.

&c.

Nous serons aimés or aimées, we shall be loved.

&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

(Que) je sois aimé or aimée, (that) I may be loved.

(Que) nous soyons aimés or aimées, (that) we may be loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

(Que) j'aie été aimé or aimée, (that) I } may have been
 (Que) nous ayons été aimés or aimées, (that) we } loved.

INFINITIVE.

Être aimé or aimée or aimés or aimées, to be loved.

Avoir été aimé or aimée or aimés or aimées, to have been loved.

159. Reflexive Verbs are conjugated by means of a double pronoun, the subject and the object, both placed before the verb, and with the verb **être** as auxiliary. The verb **se flatter**, 'flatter one's self,' given below, will serve as a model.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Je me flatte, I flatter myself.

Tu te flattes, thou flatterest thyself.

Elle se flatte, she flatters herself.

Il se flatte, he flatters himself.

Nous nous flattons, we flatter ourselves.

Vous vous flattez, you flatter yourselves.

Ils se flattent, }
 Elles se flattent, } they flatter themselves or one another.

PERFECT TENSE.

Je me suis flatté or flattée, I have flattered myself.

Tu t'es flatté or flattée, thou hast flattered thyself.

Il or elle s'est flatté or flattée, he (or she) has flattered him(her)self.

Nous nous sommes flattés or flattées, we have flattered ourselves.

Vous vous êtes flatté or flattée or flattés or flattées, you have flattered yourselves.

Ils or elles se sont flattés or flattées, they have flattered themselves or each other.

IMPERATIVE.

Flatte-toi, flatter thyself.

Flattons-nous, let us flatter ourselves.

&c.

Other parts of the reflexive verb may easily be formed on the above models. The parts given above are those most used.

Note.—Verbs reflexive in French are not always reflexive in English :

Se réjouir, to rejoice.	S'endormir, go to sleep.
S'enrhumer, catch cold.	Se vanter, boast (one's self).

160. Negative Conjugation.—The negative form of any verb is formed by placing the negative adverb **ne** before the verb, and **pas** or some other word such as **rien** or **plus**, to complete the negation, after the verb :

Je n'ai pas, I have not.	Je ne suis pas, I am not.
Tu n'as pas, thou hast not.	Tu n'es pas, thou art not.
Il n'a pas, he has not.	Il n'est pas, he is not.
Nous n'avons pas, we have not.	Nous ne sommes pas, we are not.
&c.	&c.

Je ne chante pas, or rien, I do not sing (or not at all).

Nous ne chantons pas, or plus, we do not sing (or not any more).

Il n'a jamais tort, he is never wrong.

Exception.—In the Infinitive Present both negatives usually precede the verb ; the Perfect Infinitive follows the general rule :

Ne pas avoir, not to have.

Ne pas chanter, not to sing.

N'avoir pas eu, not to have had.

N'avoir pas chanté, not to have sung.

Note.—See the sections on Negative Adverbs.

161. Interrogative Conjugation.—In the interrogative forms the subject pronoun is placed after the principal verb (between the verb and the auxiliary, if there be one), and is made enclitic, joined by a hyphen, **t** being inserted between the parts when necessary to avoid hiatus :

Ai-je ? have I ?	Suis-je ? am I ?
As-tu ? hast thou ?	Es-tu ? art thou ?
A-t-il ? has he ?	Est-il ? is he ?
Avons-nous ? have we ?	Est-elle ? is she ?
&c.	&c.

Ai-je eu? have I had?
As-tu eu? hast thou had?
A-t-il chanté? has he sung?
A-t-elle fini? has she finished?
Sont-ils venus? are they come?
Aurai-je, serai-je? shall I have, shall I be?

Note.—The vowel of **je** is silent in these forms. **Ai-je** is pronounced éj, &c.

162. Peculiar Interrogative Forms.

1. The regular interrogative form, described above, is not generally used in the first person singular of the Present tense, but the phrase **est-ce que** (see Sec. 125) is used in its place:

Est-ce que je vends (not **vends-je**)? Do I sell?
Est-ce que je chante? Am I singing?
Est-ce que je me flatte? Do I flatter myself?

Note.—This form may of course be used in other persons, &c.; but euphony chiefly demands its use as described.

2. When the first person singular of the verb ends in **e** mute, the regular form may be used, the **e** being marked with the acute accent and being pronounced:

Aimé-je? Do I love? **Chanté-je?** Do I sing?

3. Some of the most common every-day verbs generally use the shorter, more direct, regular form:

Ai-je? Have I?		Dois-je? Do I owe?
Fais-je? Do I make?		Sais-je? Do I know?
Vais-je? Do I go?		Vois-je? Do I see?

Note.—For other interrogative forms see Sections on Interrogative Pronouns.

163. Negative-Interrogative Conjugation.—The negative-interrogative forms differ from the simple interrogative only in the insertion of **ne** and **pas**, and in the order of the words in compound tenses, where the participle is placed last:

N'ai-je pas ? Have I not ?

N'as-tu pas ? Hast not thou ?

N'a-t-il pas ? Has he not ?

N'a-t-elle pas ? Has she not ?

&c. &c.

N'eus-je pas chante ? Had I not sung ?

N'eut-il pas fini ? Had he not finished ?

N'eûmes-nous pas vendu ? Had we not sold ?

Note.—In the first person of the Present tense of most verbs a circumlocution is generally used, similar to that described in the last section :

N'est-ce pas que je chante ? Do I not sing ?

N'est-ce pas que je me trompe ? Am I not mistaken ?

N'est-ce pas que j'ai donné ? Have I not given ?

This form may also be used in other persons and tenses.

164. Reflexive Forms.—The negative-reflexive, interrogative-reflexive, and negative-interrogative-reflexive forms are formed according to the rules and models given above. The following examples will sufficiently show their construction :

Je ne me suis pas flatté. I have not flattered myself.

Est-ce que je ne me trompe pas ? Am I not mistaken ?

Se trompent-ils ? Are they mistaken ?

Ne me suis-je pas flatté ? Have I not flattered myself ?

165. Some Peculiar Forms.

1. **Aller** 'to go,' **venir** 'to come,' **devoir** 'to owe,' &c., are used in certain expressions as auxiliary verbs. The forms thus made may be conjugated throughout, and are actually used in several tenses :

Je vais avoir. I am going to have (about to have).

Je dois chanter. I am to sing (owe to sing).

Je viens de venir. I have just come (come from).

J'allais recevoir. I was about to receive.

2. **S'en aller** 'go away,' **s'en retourner** 'come back,' and **s'en venir** 'come away,' may be conjugated throughout, and are used in several tenses. **En** is here an adverb of

place, from the Latin *inde*, and may be translated 'away,' 'thence,' 'hence,' &c. :

Je m'en vais. I am going away.

M'en vais-je? Am I going away?

Je ne m'en vais pas. I am not going away.

Va-t'en! Ne t'en vas pas! Go! Don't go!

Je m'en suis allé. I went off.

Il ne s'en est pas allé. He did not go off.

Ne m'en suis-je pas allé? Have I not gone away?

3. The unipersonal verbs **y avoir** and **falloir** may be conjugated throughout, and are actually used in several tenses :

Il y a. There is.

Il y avait. There was.

Il y aura. There will be.

Il faut. It is necessary.

Il fallait. It was necessary.

Il faudra. It will be necessary.

Note.—**Il fait**, 'it makes,' is used of the weather :

Il fait froid. It is cold.

Il fit chaud. It was warm.

Il fait chaud. It is warm.

Il fit bon temps. It was fine.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

166. The Verb Agrees with its subject in number and person, as in English. Special cases :

1. After a relative the verb agrees in person and number with the antecedent :

Ce sera vous qui irez. It is you who will go.

2. If the verb has several subjects it is generally in the plural, but—

3. A verb having several subjects which are synonymous or in apposition generally agrees with the nearest:

L'amour de travail, le goût de l'étude est un bien. Love of labor, taste for study (is a good thing) are good things.

4. A verb having different subjects of different persons agrees with the first person in preference to the second, &c.:

Vous ou moi parlerons. You or I will speak.

5. A verb whose subject is a collective noun limited by *de* with a noun is in the plural:

Une nuée de barbares désolèrent le pays. A cloud of barbarians desolated the land.

(The logical subject being *barbares*.)

Exception.—A noun of quantity often takes a singular verb, when the logical subject may be considered as a unit :

Le tiers des livres ne fut pas vendu. Not a third of the books were sold.

Note.—A collective noun alone does not, as often in English, take a plural verb :

Le peuple s'est révolté. The people have revolted.

6. When two subjects are joined by *ni—ni*, 'neither—nor,' the verb agrees with the logical subject in number :

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne savent lire. Neither knows how to read (both are ignorant).

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'obtiendra le prix. Neither one will get the prize (both could not).

Note.—Hence *l'un et l'autre*, and *les uns ou les autres*, take a plural verb, but *l'un ou l'autre* a singular verb :

L'un et l'autre, à ces mots, ont levé le poignard (Racine). Both at these words raised their daggers.

7. *Ce* takes a plural verb only when the predicate nominative is in the third person:

Ce sont des Anglais. It is some Englishmen.

C'est nous. It is we.

167. Government of Verbs.—Active verbs take both nouns and pronouns for their objects, as in English. There are no case-endings of nouns, but the direct object of a verb may be said to be in the Objective Case, as in English, or in the Accusative Case, as in Latin. Pronouns have special forms for the Direct Object and for the Indirect Object or Dative Case, which have been described in the Chapter on Pronouns.

When a verb has more than one object the shorter generally precedes:

Il aime le jeu et l'étude. He loves play and study.

168. Verbs with Prepositions.—Many verbs require certain prepositions after them, and often different prepositions from those required by the corresponding verb in English. Examples:

S'emparer de, to seize upon.

Rire de, to laugh at.

Echapper à, to escape from.

Songer à, to think of.

S'entêter à (or **de**), to be obstinate in.

Tarder à, to delay.

S'excuser de, to excuse one's self from.

Frémir de, to tremble at.

These peculiarities cannot all be classified, but the following rules are of value :

1. Those verbs are followed by **de** which in Latin require the genitive case. More particularly: Verbs of—

a. Pain, grief, complaint, anxiety, fear, doubt, &c. : **souffrir de**, 'suffer with ;' **frémir de**, 'tremble at ;' **douter de**, 'doubt ;' **s'affliger de**, 'be sorry for ;' **se chagriner de**, 'be vexed at.'

b. Repentance, shame, jealousy, tedium, anger, astonishment, &c. : **rougir de**, 'blush at ;' **se repentir de**, 'repent of ;' **s'indigner de**, 'be angry about.'

c. Joy, amusement, sport, &c. : **s'amuser de**, 'make fun of ;' **sourir de**, 'smile at ;' **se réjouir de**, 'rejoice in ;' **se moquer de**, 'have fun with.'

d. Pride, anger, punishment, revenge, blame, thanks, trust, &c. : **se piquer de**, 'pride one's self on ;' **punir de**, 'punish for ;' **remercier de**, 'thank for ;' **s'excuser de**, 'beg pardon for.'

2. Those verbs are followed by **à** which in Latin require the dative. More particularly : Verbs of—

a. Participation, acquiescence, obedience, contradiction, refusal, &c. : **participer à**, 'participate in ;' **adhérer à**, 'adhere to ;' **convenir à**, 'suit ;' **renoncer à**, 'give up ;' **résister à**, 'oppose ;' **obéir à**, 'obey ;' **céder à**, 'give way to ;' **survivre à**, 'survive.'

b. Advantage, disadvantage, plenty, want, appearance, disappearance, &c. : **subvenir à**, 'relieve, succeed to ;' **disparaître à**, 'dis-

appear from ;' *échapper à*, 'escape from ;' *suffire à*, 'be enough for ;' *manquer à*, 'be wanting.'

Note.—Adjectives of similar meaning take after them the same prepositions respectively :

Jaloux de, 'jealous of ;' *furieux de*, 'angry at ;' *insouciant de*, 'careless about ;' *coupable de*, 'blamable for ;' *égal à*, 'equal to ;' *utile à*, 'useful to ;' *fidèle à*, 'faithful to ;' *favorable à*, 'favorable for,' &c.

USE OF THE TENSES.

169. Use of the Present Indicative.—The Present Tense has but one form to correspond to the three forms of the English. Thus, *je chante* may mean 'I sing,' 'I am singing,' or 'I do sing.'

1. The Present is used to describe actions now going on, as in English.

2. The Present is used to describe an action or state which is past but still continuing:

Il y a trois ans que je suis ici. I have been here three years.

3. The Present may be used in historical narration, to describe past actions or states more vividly:

On m'appella ; je le vois étendu parterre. They called me ; I saw him stretched on the ground.

4. The Present may be used for the Future, to convey the idea of certainty:

Je pars demain. I am going to-morrow.

Son procès se juge demain. His case will be tried to-morrow.

Le peuple français, s'il tire l'épée, en jettera le fourreau. The French people, if it draws the sword, will throw away the scabbard (Mignet).

170. Use of the Perfect Indicative.—The Perfect Tense corresponds to the English Perfect in form, but rarely does so in sense. It is the tense most used in conversation.

1. The Perfect is used to describe an action or state in a past time not fully past or not specified:

Quand avez-vous appris votre leçon ? When did you learn your lesson?

Nous avons vu la reine aujourd'hui. We saw the queen to-day (or have seen).

2. The Perfect is often used interchangeably with the Preterite:

Je fus bien fâché hier. I was very angry yesterday.

J'ai tenu hier ma seconde séance. I had my second meeting yesterday.

Les poètes ont créé les dieux. The poets made the gods.

Il a vécu cent ans, il fut cent ans utile. He lived 100 years, he was useful 100 years (or has lived).

3. The Perfect is sometimes used for the Future Perfect:

Attendez, j'ai fini dans le moment. Wait, I shall have finished in a moment.

Attendons, d'abord que je lui aie parlé. Let us wait till I have spoken to him.

171. Use of the Imperfect Indicative.—The form of the Imperfect is derived from the Latin Imperfect in *-abam*, to which also it corresponds in meaning, but answering also in part to the Latin Perfect. It describes past actions or states, and has but one form to equal the three forms in English. Thus **je chantais** may mean 'I sang,' 'I was singing,' 'I used to sing,' or 'I did sing.'

The Imperfect regards an action as occupying time, as concrete; the Preterite views the action as a completed event or a unit, as abstract. Hence the Imperfect is the tense of description, depicting scenes and events; the Preterite being the tense of historical narration, relating facts.

1. The Imperfect is used to describe continued or repeated or customary past actions or states:

Calypso ne se pouvait consoler. Calypso was inconsolable.

Roland avait des manières simples. Roland had simple manners.

Les vaisseaux restaient à sec, tant que durait l'hiver. The ships remained on the dry land as long as the winter continued.

Oui, tout à l'heure j'étais un extravagant. Yes, all at once I became extravagant.

2. The Imperfect is often used in historical narration for the sake of vividness of description:

Je lui en parlait encore l'autre jour. I spoke to him about it again the other day.

Leur flotte effectuait une descente et détruisait les moissons. Their fleet effected a descent and destroyed the crops.

3. The Imperfect may be used of an action which was not completed, or was prevented, or is contrary to an expressed supposition or fact:

Je me noyais, dans la Tamise, tu m'a tiré de l'eau (V. Hugo). I was drowning myself in the Thames, you pulled me out of the water.

Je pouvais gagner cette victoire, Si le ciel, n'eût voulu m'en dérober la gloire (Molière). I could have won that victory if heaven had not willed to deprive me of the glory of it.

4. The Imperfect may be used to denote an action or state during which some other action is described as having occurred:

Je n'étais éloigné de la rivière; je vis près de là des pas, &c. I was not far from the river; I saw near there steps, &c.

Elle se mit à fuir; il était trop tarde. She prepared to flee; it was too late.

J'ai trouvé que la liberté valait mieux que la santé (Voltaire). I found that liberty was worth more than health.

5. The Imperfect is used in hypothetical clauses whose meaning is represented as contrary to fact:

Si ces brefs parvenaient aux évêques, il était à craindre, &c. If these despatches had reached the bishops, it was to be feared, &c. (Voltaire).

Si le santé le lui permettrait, il sortirait. If health permitted him, he would go out.

Note.—Sometimes the hypothetical supposition is only rhetorically contrary to fact :

Si Lara connaissait l'orgueil, c'était en parlant de Gonsalve.
If Lara knew pride, it was in speaking of Gonsalvo.

172. Use of the Preterite Tense.—The form of the Preterite is derived from the Latin Perfect. It is the tense of historical narration, somewhat resembling the Greek Aorist. (Sec. 171.)

1. The Preterite is used to describe an event or state occurring in a period of time wholly elapsed (last year, yesterday, &c.):

Je fus à Rome l'année passée. I was at Rome last year.

Il partit hier. He started yesterday.

2. The Preterite is much used to describe historical events, even those of a continued nature, where the imperfect might seem more appropriate:

Je le priai de me prendre sur son cheval; il y consentit. I begged him to take me upon his horse; he consented to do so.

Pendant que les Romains méprisèrent les richesses, ils furent sobres et vertueux (Bossuet). While the Romans despised riches, &c.

3. The Preterite is used to describe an action or state which took place during the time of another action or state, expressed by the Imperfect:

Je dormais quand il entra. I was asleep when he came in.

Il était neuf heures et demi quand les chefs se rencontrèrent.
It was half-past nine when the chiefs met one another.

Remark.—The choice between the Perfect and the Imperfect, or the Preterite tenses, often turns on considerations of rhetoric rather than of grammar.

173. Use of the Pluperfect Indicative.—The Pluperfect is formed from the Imperfect, by joining the perfect participle, as the Preterite Past is formed from the Preterite. Its use is very similar to that of the English Pluperfect.

1. The Pluperfect is used both in principal and in dependent clauses :

Necker avait conseillé l'économie ; Colonne vanta la prodigalité. Necker had counselled economy ; Colonne boasted of prodigality.

Quand j'avais tué un oiseau, il fallait, &c. When I had killed a bird, it was necessary, &c.

J'avais cru entendre de ce côté I had thought I heard on that side

2. The Pluperfect is used in hypothetical clauses where the supposition is contrary to fact, corresponding to the use of the Imperfect described above :

Si j'avais dit un mot, on vous donnait la mort (Voltaire). If I had said one word, they would have killed you.

J'en parlerai avec la même liberté que s'il avait cessé d'exister (Lamartine). I shall speak of him with the same freedom as though he had ceased to exist.

174. Use of the Preterite Past.—The compound tense of the Preterite does not differ in meaning from the Pluperfect. It is used with particles of time, such as **dès que**, **aussitôt que**, 'as soon as ;' **quand**, **lorsque**, 'when ;' **à peine**, 'scarcely ;' **bientôt**, 'soon,' &c. :

Dès que Raymond eut donné le signal du départ, as soon as Raymond had given the signal of departure.

Lorsqu'il fut entré dans la classe, when he had entered the class.

Les habitans avaient abandonné la ville avant que l'ennemi y entrât. The inhabitants had abandoned the city before the enemy entered it.

Note.—The Pluperfect is sometimes used with these particles to express a general or universal truth :

Mentor, qui craignait les maux, ne savait plus ce que c'était que de les craindre, dès qu'ils étaient arrivés (Fénelon).

175. Use of the Future Tenses.—The Future and the Future Perfect are used like the corresponding tenses in

English ; the future is often used as a mild form of the imperative :

Vous m'écrirez demain. Write me to-morrow.

Note.—The Future is not replaced by the Present so often as in English, and is sometimes used for the Present, to express politeness, irony, &c.:

Vous pouvez venir quand vous voudrez. You can come when you (shall) please.

Comme il vous plaira, monsieur. As it pleases (shall please) you, sir.

Vous saurez que je suis fils unique d'un riche bourgeois (Le Sage). You know (will know) that I am the only son of a rich merchant.

176. Use of the Conditional Tenses.—The Conditional (or Past Future) tenses differ only in time. They are used in dependent clauses as follows :

1. The Conditional Present (or Imperfect of the Future) and Conditional Past (or Pluperfect of the Future) are used in dependent clauses to describe an action which is future with reference to the time of the principal verb :

Ils jurèrent qu'ils n'attaqueraient pas le roi. They swore not to attack the king.

Un seul espoir restait, que le vice-roi se serait réuni, &c. Only one hope remained, that the viceroy might (afterwards) rejoin, &c.

2. The Conditional is used in the conclusion of a hypothetical sentence whose condition is contrary to known fact :

Si mon cœur était libre, il pourrait être à vous. If my heart were free it might be yours.

Il lui aurait donné cette place, s'il l'avait demandée. He would have given him that place if he had asked for it.

Note.—The condition may be suppressed or abridged :

Il serait impossible, it would be impossible (if I were to try).

Que deviendrais-je sans eux ? What would become of me without them (if I did not have them) ?

3. The Conditional may be used as a softened form of the Indicative, to express an assertion made doubtfully, or politely, or ironically:

Quoi, vous auriez l'audace! What! you would have the boldness (would you).

Je voudrais qu'il fit beau temps. I (would) wish it might be fine weather.

Je me laisserais protéger par elle! That I should let myself be protected by her!

Vous auriez dû écrire une lettre. You should have written a letter (I think).

N'aurait-elle point reçu ma lettre? Could she not have received my letter (possibly)?

177. Tenses of the Subjunctive.—The Subjunctive is almost exclusively used in dependent clauses, and hence its tense-relations are better described under the head of Sequence of Tenses. The following uses may be noticed here:

1. The present Subjunctive is used for the Imperative, or to express a wish or a prayer:

Vienne qui voudra. Let who will come.

Qu'il vienne. Let him come (may he come).

Vive le roi. Let the king live (hurrah for the king).

Que Dieu vous benisse. God bless you.

Qu'il parle, tout se tait. Let him speak, all is silent.

À Dieu ne plaise, may it not be God's will.

Vous le voulez; soit. You desire it; so be it.

2. The Present Subjunctive is used in a few phrases to soften an assertion out of doubtfulness or politeness:

Je ne sache rien, I know nothing (I think).

Que je sache, for all I know (Latin *quod sciam*).

Pas que je sache! Not that I know of!

Que je pense, as I think, as it seems to me.

3. The Preterite Subjunctive is sometimes also used in commands or prayers:

Plût à Dieu que, that it might.

Dût le ciel égalier le supplice à l'offense! That heaven were obliged to equal the punishment to the offence!

Qu'il choisisse, s'il veut, d'Auguste ou de Tibère. Let him choose, if he will, Augustus or Tiberius.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

178. Sequence in the Indicative.—The tenses of the Indicative may follow one another according to the time-relations of the action or state described, as in English. One point requires notice.

1. The Imperfect is used in hypothetical sentences to express a supposition contrary to fact in the present, and the Pluperfect to express a similar supposition in the past :

J'irais avec vous si j'avais le temps. I would go with you if I had the time.

Si je n'avais pas appaisé le querelle, &c. (Corneille). If I had not appeased the quarrel.

179. Sequence of Subjunctive Tenses.

1. The Present Subjunctive is used after the Present, the Future and the Perfect Indicative (but the Perfect only in its own proper meaning) :

Il veut que je le serve. He wishes me to serve him.

Le sceptre ne sortira de Juda, jusqu'à ce que vienne celui qui, &c. (Bossuet). The sceptre shall not depart from Juda until he shall come who—.

2. After other tenses, including the Perfect used with the meaning of the Preterite, and after the Conditional, the Preterite Subjunctive is used in dependent clauses, or the Pluperfect, according to the time-relation with the principal verb :

<i>Je doutais</i>	<i>que vous étudiassiez</i>	<i>aujourd'hui.</i>
<i>Je doutai</i>	“ “	“ “
<i>J'ai douté</i>	“ “	“ “
<i>Je douterais</i>	“ “	“ “
<i>J'aurais douté</i>	“ “	“ “
<i>J'avais douté</i>	“ “	“ “

I was doubting	that you were studying to-day.
I doubted	“ “ “ “ “
I should doubt	“ “ “ “ “
I should have doubted	“ “ “ “ “
I had doubted	“ “ “ “ “
Je doutais	que vous eussiez étudié hier.
Je doutai	“ “ “ “ “
J'ai douté	“ “ “ “ “
Je douterais	“ “ “ “ “
J'aurais douté	“ “ “ “ “
J'avais douté	“ “ “ “ “
I was doubting	that you had studied yesterday.
I doubted	“ “ “ “ “
I should doubt	“ “ “ “ “
I should have doubted	“ “ “ “ “
I had doubted	“ “ “ “ “

USE OF THE MODES.

The Indicative and Imperative are used as in English, except so far as already described. The Subjunctive, the Infinitive and the Participle require special attention.

180. Use of the Subjunctive.—The Subjunctive is used to denote uncertainty, conditionality, or dependence of thought, and chiefly in relative clauses.—Special Rules :

1. The Subjunctive is used in substantive dependent clauses after verbs which express will, purpose, desire, command, forbidding, or any idea which throws uncertainty over the action of the dependent verb :

J'ordonne qu'il aille. I order him to go.

Que voulez-vous que je sache? What do you wish me to know?

Je défends qu'on prenne les armes. I forbid them to take arms.

Prends garde qu'on ne te voie. Take care they don't see you.

Il faudrait attendre que les pères des victimes fussent morts.
It would have been necessary to wait until the fathers of the victims should be dead.

Exception.—Verbs of this class may be followed by the Indicative to imply an assertion of fact or of certainty :

Ordonna que chacun régnerait son année (Racine). He ordered that each should reign his year.

Le tribunal a décidé que la donation était nulle (Academy). The court decided that the donation was null.

Prenez garde que l'auteur ne dit pas ce que, &c. Take care the author does not say that which, &c.

2. The Subjunctive is used in substantive clauses dependent on expressions of mental state or action, such as knowing, forgetting, being ignorant, hoping, fearing, complaining, being sorry or angry, &c.:

Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie le danger où il est (Acad.). I am astonished that he does not see the danger he is in.

Nous sommes heureux qu'il n'en ait rien su (Acad.). We are glad that he knew nothing about it.

Il se plaint qu'on l'ait calomnié (Acad.). He complains that he has been slandered.

On pensait que ce fussent des Bohèmes (Seigné). It was thought that they were some Bohemians.

Supposons que notre histoire générale fût à composer (Chateaubriand). Suppose our general history were still to be composed.

N'espérez plus alors que l'on vienne à votre aide. Do not hope then any longer that any one will come to your aid.

J'ignorais qu'elle fût comédienne (Lesage).

Voit-on à mes yeux que j'aie pleuré ?

Exception.—The Indicative is sometimes used after such phrases, to express an assertion of positive fact on the part of the speaker :

Claire se plaignait de ce qu'on l'avait appelé par son nom. Claire complained that they called her by her name.

Je suppose qu'un moine est charitable (La Fontaine). I take for granted that a monk is (of course) charitable. (Ironical.)

Ne vois tu pas que l'escalier est rompu ? Do you not see that the staircase is broken ?

Si l'on savait même que tu as parlé pour lui. If he only knew that you have spoken for him.

3. The Subjunctive is used in a substantive clause which is the subject of a verb used impersonally, like **il faut**; **il**

suffit, 'it is enough ;' il semble, 'it seems ;' il est faux, 'it is false ;' c'est dommage, 'it is a pity,' &c. :

Il importe que vous y soyez. It is important for you to be there.

Il était naturel que le pouvoir se concentrât. It was natural that power should concentrate.

C'est heureux qu'il fasse nuit (Dumas). It is lucky that it is becoming night.

Mieux vaudrait que le soleil perdît ses rayons, &c. It would be better that the sun should lose his rays.

4. The Subjunctive is used in temporal clauses, that is, adverbial clauses denoting time, after **avant que**, 'before ;' **en attendant que**, 'whilst ;' **jusqu'à ce que**, 'until ;' **tant que**, 'insomuch that,' &c. :

Avant qu'il soit neuf mois, &c., before nine months.

En attendant que les nouvelles levées se formassent. Whilst the new levies were forming.

Des fosses profondes, où l'on précipite, &c., jusqu'à ce qu'elles soient remplies.

Exception.—Sometimes the Indicative is used in temporal clauses, to give positiveness to the assertion in the dependent verb :

Lucain fut d'abord ami de Néron, jusqu'à ce qu'il eut la noble imprudence de disputer contre lui le prix de poésie (Voltaire).

5. The Subjunctive is used in causal, conditional, concessive, consecutive (expressing result), and final (expressing purpose) clauses ; that is, in adverbial clauses expressing cause, or with **posé que**, 'granted that ;' **en cas que**, 'in case that ;' **pourvu que**, 'provided ;' **bien que**, **quoique**, 'although ;' **soit que**, 'whether ;' **si que**, 'so ;' **qui que**, **quel que**, 'whoever ;' **de sorte que**, **de manière que**, 'in such a way that ;' **pour que**, 'in order that ;' **sans que**, 'unless ;' &c., or **que** used in place of any of these :

Ce n'est pas que nous eussions de voix fort agréables, mais, &c. (Le Sage). It was not because we had very agreeable voices, but—

Je ne me serais consolé si monsieur le comte eût succombé.
I should have been inconsolable if the Count had fallen.

Mais que Molière eût traité ce sujet, &c., but if Molière had treated this subject, &c.

Posé le cas que cela fût, que feriez-vous? (Acad.). Granting that this were the case, what would you do?

Pourvu qu'il y eût un fait vrai ou faux à raconter, que ce fait offrit un grand spectacle, cela leur suffisait (Chateaubr.). If only ^{there was} he had something, true or false, to tell, and it made a fine show, that was enough for them.

Il fait bon craindre, encore que l'on soit saint (La Fontaine). It is well to fear, although one is holy.

Soit qu'il ait de l'appétit ou qu'il n'en ait pas, il croit toujours qu'il est malade. Whether he has any appetite or not, he always thinks he is sick.

Quelque puissants qu'ils soient, je ne les crains point (Acad.). However powerful they may be, I do not fear them at all.

Tout auteur que je sois, je ne suis pas jaloux. Author though I be, I am not jealous.

Quel qu'il soit, nul rempart ne le peut protéger. Whoever he may be, no rampart will protect him.

Vous n'êtes pas si bas que vous ne puissiez vous relever (Le Sage). You are not so low that you cannot rise.

Le mal fut assez grand pour que . . . il fit époque (Segur). The misfortune was so great as to make an epoch.

Ils ne voulurent point le quitter qu'ils ne l'eussent tiré de la Russie, et qu'il fût en sureté (Ségur). They were not willing to leave him until they had taken him out of Russia, and he was in safety.

Pour qu'une innovation soit pacifique, il faut, &c. (Mignet). For an innovation to be peaceful, it is necessary, &c.

Exception.—The Indicative is sometimes used in such clauses to express a positive assertion of the fact contained in the dependent clause :

Bien entendu que vous ferez ce que je vous demande (Acad.). It being well understood that you will do what I ask of you.

Tout cassé que je suis, je cours toute la ville (Corneille). All injured as I am I run through all the city.

Combien que les malhonnêtes gens prospèrent, &c. However dishonest men may prosper (and they do), &c.

6. The Subjunctive is used in adjective dependent clauses ; that is, after a relative, a superlative, a negative, or such a phrase as *le seul, l'unique*, 'the only ;' *le premier*, 'the first ;' *le dernier*, 'the last ;' *il n'y a que*, 'there is only,' &c. :

Je voudrais inventer quelque petit cadeau, qui coûtât peu d'argent, et qui parût nouveau (Regnard). I would like to find some little present, which would cost but little, and appear new.

Montrez-moi des héros que je puisse honorer. Show me heroes whom I can honor.

Reprends des sentimens qui soient dignes de toi. Take again sentiments worthy of yourself.

Le meilleur usage qu'on puisse faire, the best use that one could make.

Il est peu d'hommes qui sachent véritablement aimer (Stæhl). Few men know truly how to love.

Néron est le premier empereur qui ait persécuté l'église (Bossuet). Nero was the first emperor to persecute the church.

Qu'est il arrivé qui puisse vous dégager de l'obéissance ? What has happened that could release you from obedience ?

À quoi sert d'avoir un roi qui sache bien ? &c. What use to have a king who knows well how to ? &c.

Quel que fût le nombre d'invitations qui put lui arriver.

Exception.—The Indicative is frequently used after superlatives and the like, and rarely in other adjective clauses :

C'est le moindre secret qu'il pouvait, &c. It is the smallest secret which he could, &c.

C'était la plus intrépide menteuse que j'ai connue. She was the boldest liar I ever knew.

Il n'y eut que moi qui espérai la victoire (Fénelon). I alone expected victory.

181. Use of the Infinitive (alone).—The Infinitive is really a verbal noun, and as such is used as subject, predicate, object, or in apposition, &c. :

1. The Infinitive is used as subject or as predicate, or in apposition :

S'étonner est du peuple, admirer est du sage. To be astonished belongs to the people, to admire to the wise.

Vous entendre louer me rend heureux et fière. To hear you praised makes me happy and proud.

Il faut être utile aux hommes, pour être grand à leurs yeux (Massillon). One must be useful to men to be great in their eyes.

Il me semble avoir vu remuer cette porte (Dumas). It seems to me I saw that door move.

À la fin c'est parler. After all, it is to speak.

Cette dignité qui paraît venir avec la puissance. That dignity which seems to come with power.

Il n'y a pour l'homme que trois événemens, naître, vivre, et mourir (La Bruyère). There are for man but three events, to be born, live, and die.

2. The Infinitive is used as direct object only after verbs of sensation or mental state or action, including **dire**, 'to tell;' **faire**, 'to cause;' **laisser**, 'to permit;' **devoir**, 'to be under obligation;' **écrire**, 'to write;' **pouvoir**, 'to be able;' **oser**, 'to dare,' and the like:

Ce que j'avais ouï dire. What I had heard said.

Chacun pense voir son image. Each one thinks he sees his image.

Elle desire vous parler. She wishes to speak to you.

Je ferai bâtir une maison. I shall have a house built.

Je crois être blessé. I believe (myself) to be wounded.

Il s'imagine être un grand homme. He thinks himself a great man.

Il ne fait que jouer. He does nothing but play.

J'ai manqué me trahir. I was on the point of betraying myself.

Exceptions.—Verbs of desiring, preferring, and hoping (excepting **vouloir**) admit after them the Infinitive with **de**. **Devoir** in the sense of 'to owe' regularly takes the Infinitive with **de**:

Je préférerais mourir que de trahir mon ami.

Peut-on espérer de vous revoir ?

On se doit à soi-même de respecter les bienséances.

Ex. 2.—Also, if an indirect object (Dative case) intervenes between the Infinitive and the principal verb, the Infinitive with *de* is required :

Dites au roi, seigneur, de vous l'abandonner (Racine). Tell the king, sir, to abandon him to you.

3. The Infinitive is sometimes used with a subject, depending on a verb of the classes mentioned in 2, like the Latin Accusative with the Infinitive :

Nous l'avons entendue parler (Voltaire). We have heard him speak.

Je sens des larmes baigner mon visage. I feel tears bathing my face.

C'est ce qui le fait vivre. It is this which makes him live.

O Julie! si le destin t'eût laissée vivre.

4. The Infinitive is used after verbs expressing or implying motion, to denote the purpose of the motion :

Ils allèrent demeurer à Oviedo. They went to live at Oviedo.

Elle a été trouver le roi. She went to find the king.

L'alliance que Judas avait envoyé demander. The alliance which Judas had sent to ask for, etc.

Exception.—The verb *venir* in the sense of 'to come to be,' 'to arrive at,' takes the Infinitive with *à* :

Nous vinmes à parler de telle chose (Acad.). We came to speak (arrived at speaking) of such a thing.

Si le secret venait à être découvert. If the secret reached being discovered (came to be).

5. The Infinitive is sometimes used elliptically in exclamations or questions :

Moi, vous abandonner! I, to abandon you!

Comment découvrir le secret, how to discover the secret.

Pourquoi toujours parler, &c., why always talk, &c.

Où donc te rencontrer, where then to find thee!

6. The Infinitive may be used after any preposition except *en*, which requires the present participle :

Sans aller, without going.

Pour voir, in order to see.

Avant de partir, before going.

Par les détruire, by destroying them.

En les regardant, in looking at them.

Note.—For *en* with the Participle, see Sec. 185.

182. The Infinitive with *De*.

1. The Infinitive with *de* is used after verbs, nouns, adjectives, and particles, wherever a noun with *de* (Genitive case) might be used in the same way :

As-tu peur de mourir ? Are you afraid to die ?

Je suis sûr de l'avoir entendu.

On l'accusa d'avoir eu des intelligences avec l'ennemi. He was accused of having had communication with the enemy.

Il n'est pas près de finir. He is not near finishing.

2. The Infinitive with *de* is used as the logical subject, where the grammatical subject has been supplied, usually with *il* or *ce*, before the principal verb :

Il est doux de revoir les murs de la patrie (Corneille). It is sweet to see again the walls of my country.

C'est bien mal d'effrayer ainsi ses amis (Dumas). It is very wrong thus to frighten his friends.

Le défaut de Fléchier est de toujours écrire, et de ne jamais parler. Fléchier's fault is always writing, and never speaking. (The usual form **C'est le défaut de Fléchier de**, &c., explains this last example.)

Note.—When two infinitives are compared together, the second takes *de*, the first not:

Plutôt mourir que d'être esclave (Acad.). Sooner die than be a slave.

So also after comparatives, and after *à moins que*, *avant que*, *si que*, &c. :

J'ai voulu te revoir avant que d'expirer.

À moins d'être fou, &c. (que omitted), unless one is a fool.

Qui vous rend si hardi que de m'interroger ? What makes you so bold as to question me ?

3. The Infinitive with **de** is used as the object of transitive verbs, either with or without a personal object :

Il résolut de cultiver mon esprit (Le Sage). He determined to cultivate my intellect.

On craint de se montrer. One fears to show himself.

Adèle lui demande de revenir souvent.

Note.—Verbs of sensation and mental state or action, &c., as described in Sec. 181, take the Infinitive without **de**, and some verbs require **à**, as below :

4. The Infinitive with **de** is sometimes used elliptically to introduce a subject, or like the Latin historical Infinitive :

De recourir à Blanche, to return to Blanche.

Chaque électeur alors de dire: C'est vrai. Each voter then said, "It is true."

183. The Infinitive with **À**.

1. The Infinitive with **à** is used after a verb to denote the purpose, manner, instrument, condition, cause, &c., of the action of the principal verb :

Aidez-moi à oublier que je suis roi.

Tu vas passer encore une nuit à travailler (Dumas). You will pass still one night in labor.

Ils n'ont rien à gagner. They have nothing to gain.

À vous entendre, on croit que vous avez raison. To hear you, one would suppose you were right.

Cette fête, à vrai dire, &c., this festival, to tell the truth.

2. The Infinitive with **à** is sometimes used like a gerund, either attributively or predicatively, to denote obligation or possibility :

Une trône n'est pas à dédaigner. A throne is not to be despised.

Il restait à sauver quatre mille habitans. It remained to save 4000 inhabitants.

C'est un procès à ne jamais finir (Acad.). It is an unending process.

Un sourire à glacer l'improvisateur. A smile fit to freeze the improviser.

Facile à remarquer, easy to notice (be noticed).

Impossible à passer, impossible to pass (be passed).

Aisé à trouver, easy to find (be found).

3. The Infinitive with **à** is used after some transitive verbs, for the most part the same which in Latin take the Infinitive, viz.: verbs of giving, having, seeking, finding, teaching, learning, forgetting, preparing, beginning, ending, longing, loving, and the like :

J'ai à faire une visite. I have a call to make.

Il y à tout à espérer. There is everything to hope.

Il est à croire. It is credible.

Chercher à se rappeler, to try to remember.

Je commence déjà à parler Français. I am already beginning to speak French.

Oublier à chanter, to forget how to sing.

(**Oublier chanter** means 'to forget to sing').

Enseigner à lire, to teach how to read.

184. The Infinitive with À or De.—In some cases the Infinitive may be used with either **à** or **de**, but with a difference of meaning :

Manquer à faire, to neglect to do.

Manquer de faire, to come near doing.

S'il venait à apprendre, if he happened to learn.

Ils viennent de sortir, they have just gone out.

C'est à vous à parler, it is your turn to speak.

C'est à vous de parler, it is your duty to speak.

Note.—The Infinitive may be used with either **à** or **de** without change of meaning, after a few verbs :

Il ne demande qu'à manger et à boire.

Elle demanda au ciel de lui pardonner sa faute.

Le banquier s'engagea à (or de) payer la somme de 1000 francs.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

185. The Present Participle is really a gerund in its nature, and is usually indeclinable ; but it is sometimes used as a verbal adjective, agreeing in gender and number with its noun. The verbal noun is in French not the participle but the Infinitive.

1. The Present Participle when used like a gerund is invariable :

Amitié, triomphant à son tour, friendship conquering in its turn.

Les animaux, vivant d'une manière plus conforme à la nature (Rousseau), the animals, living in a manner nearer to nature.

C'est que nous ne pouvions savoir, étant sans pilote, et ne pouvant voir les bancs, &c. (Segur).

Elle nous faisait signe, comme nous disant un éternel adieu (St.-Pierre).

2. The Present Participle may be used with a noun, absolutely ; like the Latin Ablative Absolute :

Le cas échéant, je suis, &c., it happening so, I am, &c.

Les Romains, se destinant à la guerre, et la regardant comme le seul art, &c. (Montesquieu).

3. The Present Participle is often used with the Preposition **en**, to denote that two events occur at the same time :

Il riait en me regardant (Fénelon). He looked at me and laughed.

On hasarde de perdre en voulant trop gagner. One risks losing when he tries to get too much.

L'appétit vient toujours en mangeant. The appetite grows while eating.

En disant ces mots, les larmes lui vinrent aux yeux (Fénelon). As he said these words, the tears, &c.

En rentrant chez moi, as I re-entered my house, &c.

Note.—A construction derived from the Latin 'in' with a gerund.

4. The Present Participle used adjectively agrees in gender and number with its noun :

Elle paraît souffrante. She appeared to suffer.

Il m'offrit une main fumante de sang (Voltaire). He offered me a hand smoking with blood.

Note.—The Participle may be invariable even in such cases, in order to make the idea of action more prominent :

Tu foules une terre toujours fumant du sang. You tread a soil that always smokes with blood.

Une fenêtre donnant sur une petite rue (Dumas). A window that looks upon a narrow street.

5. The Adjective-Participle may, like any other adjective, be used as a noun :

Les mourants, the dying.

Une intrigante, a female intriguer.

Les habitants, the inhabitants (dwellers).

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

186. The Perfect Participle is used adjectively, or absolutely, or as a part of the compound tenses of the verb.

1. The Perfect Participle used absolutely (like the Latin Ablative Absolute), is placed with its subject in the Objective (Accusative) case, and agrees with its subject in number and gender :

Eux punis, nous pourrons, &c., they being punished, we might be able.

Il ne sera pas dit que, moi parti, vous rirez de la dupe que vous venez de faire (Dumas). It shall not be said that, when I am gone, you laugh at the dupe you have just made.

La constitution étant achevée (Thiers), the constitution being finished.

Note.—Sometimes the noun is omitted, and must be supplied from the context, the Participle standing absolute, alone :

Arrivés à ce point (Dumas), having come to this point.

Accoutumés à tout ce que (Massillon), accustomed, &c.

2. The Perfect Participle may be used as an adjective,

either attributively or predicatively, agreeing with its noun in gender and number :

La terre n'est couverte que de palais détruits, de trônes renversés. The earth is covered with nothing but ruined palaces and overturned thrones.

Tenez toujours divisés les méchants (La Fontaine). Keep the rascals always divided.

Je vois aux flammes éternelles,

Nos rois précipités sans fin (Béranger).

I behold our kings ever plunged in endless flames.

Note.—This includes the past participles of all verbs conjugated with *être* (passive and intransitive), as well as all that can have a predicate nominative after them. In all these the Perfect Participle may be considered as used like an adjective used predicatively.

Exception.—The participles *attendu*, 'whereas' ('expected'); *compris*, 'included'; *excepté*, 'except'; *ouï*, 'heard,' 'said'; *passé*, 'past'; *supposé*, 'supposed'; *vu*, 'examined,' 'seen'; *ci-joint*, 'annexed'; *ci-inclus*, 'enclosed,' are used as adjectives with a peculiar agreement. When they precede the noun to which they belong they are indeclinable, when they are placed after the noun they agree with it :

Vous trouverez ci-joint copie du contrat.

Mes amis exceptés. Excepté mes amis.

But, *ci-joint* and *ci-inclus* agree with a following noun, if an article intervenes :

Vous trouverez ci-incluse la copie du contrat (Academy).

3. The Perfect Participle agrees in number and gender with its object, when it forms a part of a compound tense of a transitive or reflexive verb (that is, any verb which can have a direct object), if the object precedes the Participle :

La lettre que j'ai reçue, the letter I received.

Le bruit les a tous attirés. The noise attracted them all.

La fable que j'ai eue à composer. The story which I had to compose.

Que de miracles les historiens ont prodigués (Voltaire.) How many miracles the historians have lavished !

Exceptions.—When a verb is used impersonally the Perfect Participle always remains unchanged. Also the participle **été** is always invariable :

Les chaleurs excessives qu'il a fait (Condillac), the excessive heat which there has been.

Que de maux il en est déjà résulté! How many evils have already resulted from it.

Note.—A noun used absolutely to denote time, &c. (Accusative of time, &c.), is of course not the direct object, and the Participle does not agree with it :

Les nombreuses années que j'ai vécu (Rousseau), the many years I have lived.

La peine que ce travail m'a coûté (Academy), the trouble which this work cost me.

Exception.—The Participle is sometimes attracted into agreement with a noun dependent on the direct object, when the latter is a noun of quantity :

Le peu de leçons que j'ai prises ont suffi (Academy). The few lessons I took were enough.

But compare : **Le peu de diligence qu'il a mis dans la conduite de cette affaire (Academy).** The little diligence (lack of diligence), &c. Here if the Participle were in agreement the meaning would be changed.

4. In all other cases the Participle is invariable, viz. : when the object follows the verb, the parts of the verb being thrown together ; or when there is no direct object :

J'ai perdu mes livres. I have lost my books.

Ils se sont écrit deux lettres. They wrote each other two letters.

Note.—The following cases of the absence of a direct object may need remark.

(1.) When the object of the compound tense is an Infinitive :

Elle s'est fait aimer, elle m'a fait haïr (Corneille). She made (people) love her, she made (them) hate me.

Tous les soldats s'étaient laissé prendre (Voltaire). All the soldiers let (them) take them (themselves to be taken).

La vérité qu'il a négligé de suivre (Fénelon). The truth which he has omitted following.

Compare **Je les ai vu frapper**, I saw (some one) strike them (saw them struck), with **Je les ai vues frapper**, I saw them strike (some one else).

(2.) When the adverb **en**, in a partitive sense, intervenes, implying the real object :

Avez-vous des fleurs ? Oui, il nous en a donné.

Here no direct object is expressed.

Sometimes, however, even though **en** intervenes, the Participle agrees with the real object, to avoid ambiguity :

L'usage des cloches est de la plus haute antiquité ; nous n'en avons eues en France qu'au sixième siècle (Voltaire).

Here if **eues** were not in agreement, the object might be thought to be **usage**, and not **cloches**.

(3.) When the apparent object is really a noun (Accusative) of time, space, price, &c. See above, 3, Note.

(4.) When the Participle is followed by an Infinitive with **à**, it may either agree or not agree with the object, if there is one :

La fable que j'ai eue à composer.

Les peines qu'ils ont eu à souffrir.

5. Compound Participles require no special attention, being treated like Perfect Participles.

THE ADVERB.

187. Adverbs are, in general, formed from adjectives, as follows :

1. Adjectives ending in a vowel form adverbs by adding **-ment** :

aisé, easy,	aisément, easily.
poli, polished, smooth,	poliment, smoothly.
absolu, absolute,	absolument, absolutely.
sage, wise,	sagement, wisely.

Except—beau, nouveau, fou, and mou, which make *bellement, nouvellement, &c.*, according to the rule following, and *traître*, which has *traîtreusement*.

2. Adjectives ending in a consonant form adverbs by adding **-ment** to the feminine form :

franc, free,	franchement, freely.
vif, quick,	vivement, quickly.
léger, light,	légèrement, lightly.

Except—*gentil*, pretty, *gentiment* ; *gros*, coarse, *grossièrement*.

3. The following adjectives form adverbs by changing final **e** into **é**, and adding **-ment** :

aveugle,	blind,	aveuglément.
commode,	convenient,	commodément.
conforme,	conformable,	conformément.
confus,	confused,	confusément.
diffus,	diffused,	diffusément.
énorme,	enormous,	énormément.
exprès,	express,	expressément.
immense,	immense,	immensément.
importun,	importunate,	importunément.
obscur,	obscure,	obscurément.
opiniâtre,	obstinate,	opiniâtrément.
précis,	precise,	précisément.
profond,	profound,	profondément.
profus,	profuse,	profusément.
uniforme,	uniform,	uniformément.

And by this analogy,

impuni,	unpunished,	impunément.
---------	-------------	-------------

4. Adjectives in **-ant** and **-ent** drop the **t** and assimilate the **n** to the **m** of the ending :

prudent,	prudent,	prudemment.
élégant,	elegant,	élagamment.
éloquent,	eloquent,	éloquemment.

Except—lent, slow, lentement; véhément, vehement, véhémentement.

188. Many Adverbs are not formed from adjectives :

diablement,	like the devil,	(from diable).
bêtement,	stupidly,	(from bête).
profusément,	profusely,	(as if from profus).
incessamment,	incessantly,	(cesser, 'to stop').
ailleurs,	elsewhere,	(Lat., aliorum).
souvent,	often,	(" subinde).
encore,	more,	(" hanc horam).
longtemps,	long since,	(" longum tempus).
alors,	then,	(" ad illam horam).
enfin,	at last,	(" in fine).
partout,	everywhere,	(" per totum).
depuis,	afterwards,	(" de post).
derrière,	back,	(" de retro).
désormais,	henceforth,	(" de ipsa hora magis).
dorénavant,	henceforth,	(" de hora in ab ante).
ensemble,	together,	(" in simul).
ici,	here,	(" ecce hic).
jadis,	formerly,	(" jam diu).
déjà,	already,	(" jam).

189. Some Adjectives are used as adverbs without any change, as in English :

vite, quick-ly.	fort, strong-ly.
haut, loud-ly.	bas, low, in a low voice.
droit, straight-way.	juste, exact-ly.
ferme, firm-ly.	cher, dear, at a high price.
clair, clear-ly.	mauvais, bad-ly.

190. Comparison of Adverbs.—Those adverbs which are capable of comparison are compared in the same way as adjectives, by the use of **plus, le plus, moins, le moins, &c.**

191. Position of Adverbs.—An adverb which qualifies a verb generally follows the verb in simple tenses, and is placed between the verb and the participle in compound tenses :

Je pense souvent à vous. I often think of you.

Je n'ai jamais vu votre livre.

Exception.—Adverbial phrases, and the adverbs *aujourd'hui*, 'to-day;' *demain*, 'to-morrow;' *hier*, 'yesterday,' are placed after both parts of a compound tense :

Je l'ai rencontré par hasard. I met him by chance.

192. *En*, *Y*, *Dont*, and *Où* are usually used for pronouns, and are explained Sec. 130, f. As adverbs they need no special remark.

NEGATIVES.

193. *Ne* with a **Completing Word**.—The general negative adverb is *ne*; but in ordinary sentences *ne* (which becomes *n'* before a vowel or *h* mute) is followed by some word to complete or strengthen the negation. This completing word may be an adverb, as *pas* (originally a noun from Latin *passus*), *point* (Latin *punctum*), *guère*, 'little' (from *grandem rem*), *jamais*, 'ever' (from *jam magis*), *plus*, 'more,' &c. ; or a noun, as *rien*, 'a thing' (Latin *rem*), *goutte*, 'a drop,' *mie*, 'a crumb' (colloquial only); or an indefinite pronoun, as *personne*, 'any one,' *aucun*, 'any one' (Latin *aliquis*), *nul*, 'none,' *quelconque*, 'whosoever, &c. ; or a conjunction, as *ni*, 'neither' (Latin *nec*), *que*, 'but, only, unless' (Latin *quod*) :

Le consulat n'est point fait pour son age (Voltaire). The consulate is not at all made for his age.

Je ne sais plus. I know no more.

Elle n'a jamais dit cela. She never said that.

Il ne prend aucun soin de ses affaires (Academy). He takes no care of his business.

Personne ne veut être plaint de ses erreurs. No one likes to be complained to about his errors.

Elle n'est ni belle ni riche. She is neither beautiful nor rich.

Ni vous ni moi ne le pouvons. Neither you nor I can do it.

Je n'ai que deux sœurs. I have only two sisters.

Nous n'avions guère que neuf ans. We were scarcely nine years old.

Exception.—The completing word is very rarely omitted in ordinary sentences :

Il ne faut tenter Dieu. You must not tempt God.

Ce n'est sa faute, &c., it is not his fault, &c.

Note 1.—*Pas, point, rien, and plus* may be strengthened by *du tout*:

Il n'aura rien du tout. He will have nothing at all.

Je n'y songe plus du tout. I don't care any more about it at all.

Note 2.—Sometimes different completing words are combined:

On ne garda plus aucunes mesure. They no longer kept any bounds.

Je n'ai jamais rien accordé à la menace. I never granted anything to threats.

Note 3.—Two complete negatives make an affirmative:

Je ne puis point, à la vérité, ne point admirer leur courage, mais je ne puis (Sec. 194) *aussi ne pas sentir, &c., et ne point haïr, &c.* (Rollin).

Note 4.—*Non plus que*, 'no more than,' may be used after *ne* without a completing word:

Il ne dort non plus que votre père (Racine). He is not asleep, any more than your father.

Vous ne le voulez pas, ni moi non plus (Academy).

But—*Je n'en sais rien, non plus que vous* (Academy).

191. Ne without Completing Word.—In some expressions *ne* is used alone as the negative, and a completing word is not admitted:

1. *Ne* alone is used in negative clauses containing the verbs *pouvoir*, 'to be able;' *oser*, 'to dare;' *cesser*, 'to cease;' *bouger*, 'to budge;' *savoir*, 'to know,' except in the sense of 'to understand,' and the phrase *avoir garde*, 'to take care,' and the like:

Elle n'osait rentrer. She did not dare to enter.

La liberté ne cesse d'être aimable (Corneille). Liberty never ceases to be lovely.

Je ne saurais me taire. I should not be able to keep silent.

Il ne sait ce qu'il veut. He does not know what he wants.

Note.—The form *peux*, in the present of *pouvoir*, takes *ne-pas*.

2. **Ne** alone is used in negative rhetorical questions (those asked for confirmation), and in questions with **que**, 'how' or 'why':

Qui n'a ses torts dans ce bas monde? Who has not his wrongs in this world below?

Qui ne sait son pouvoir? Who does not know his power?

Que n'attendez vous? Why don't you pay attention?

Que ne se corrige-t-il? Why does he not correct himself?

3. **Ne** alone is used in some colloquial expressions and some elliptical expressions or incomplete sentences:

N'importe. No matter.

Je n'ai que faire à cela. I have nothing to do with that.

À Dieu ne plaise. God forbid!

Ne vous déplaie. Are you willing?

Qu'à cela ne tienne. Never mind!

N'avoir d'autre que, to have no other way but.

Ne dire mot. Not to say a word.

4. **Ne** alone is used in limiting clauses expressing an exception, introduced by **si**, 'if,' **à moins que**, 'unless,' and the like:

Je ne sortirez pas si vous ne me venez prendre en voiture (Academy). I will not go out unless you come to take me in a carriage.

À moins que vous ne preniez bien votre temps, &c. (Academy), if you do not well choose your time.

Fuis, si tu ne veux être attrappé. Flee, unless you wish to be taken.

Si je n'étais moi, &c., if I were not myself.

5. **Ne** alone is used in a relative clause depending on a negative proposition, or one which has a negative effect:

Il n'y a pas une de ces lettres dont je ne sache d'avance le contenu.

Est-il un seul de vous qui ne tremble pour lui?

Il est peu de grand hommes qui ne soient sensibles au plaisir de commander. Few great men (*i. e.*, none) are not, &c.

195. Other Negatives without Ne.—The absolute negative

is **non** ; also many of the completing words given above may stand alone without **ne** :

1. When the negative qualifies a single word, except an infinitive, **non** is used. **Non** is also the direct negative answer to a question :

Non loin de la ville, not far from the city.

Il y a un non-moi. There is a not-me, non-ego.

Non plus que moi, no more than I.

Non, monsieur. No, sir.

Exception.—With the Infinitive, **ne pas**, **ne point**, &c., are used, both words preceding it :

Ne pas se venger, not to avenge one's self.

Ne rien manger, to eat nothing.

When the Infinitive is used in all respects as a noun, this does not apply.

2. To render negative an incomplete sentence, including an answer to a question which is more than a simple negative, **pas**, **point**, **rien**, **jamais**, &c., are used without **ne** :

Avez-vous été à Rome ? Jamais.

Êtes-vous fâché ? Point. Are you angry ? Not at all.

Avez-vous de l'argent ? Pas trop. Have you any money ? Not too much.

Ferez-vous cela ? Du tout. Will you do it ? Yes, all !

Prendrai-je cela ? Non pas, s'il vous plait.

Vous a-t-il dit qui vous êtes ? Pas encore. Not yet.

3. In exclamations, questions, &c., which imply reference to something preceding, **ne** is often omitted :

Rien de plus facile, nothing easier.

Rien de Monsieur le duc de Richelieu ? Nothing of the Duke of Richelieu ?

Plus de mystère ! Plus de mariage secret ! No more mystery ! No more about a secret marriage !

Rien que pour ce mot-là vous méritez, &c. (Nothing but) for that word you deserve, &c.

Similarly :—**Les gens peu ou point instruits. Une perception de l'âme non point indécise.**

196. Peculiar Use of Ne.—The word *ne* is used in some peculiar expressions in which it admits of no translation into English, or can only be rendered by ‘lest;’ a usage derived from a similar use of the Latin *ne* :

1. **Ne** is required after expressions of hindrance, fear, doubt, danger, denial, avoidance, forbidding, preventing, and the like, in dependent clauses :

Je crains qu’il ne vienne. I fear (lest) he will come.

J’empêcherai qu’il ne sorte. I will forbid his going out.

Je tremble qu’on ne vous voit. I tremble (lest) you may be seen.

Il est dangereux que la vanité n’étouffe une partie. There is danger (lest) that vanity should stifle, &c.

Prends garde qu’on ne te voie. Take care lest you are seen.

Évitez qu’il vous ne parle. Avoid his speaking to you.

Je ne nie pas que je ne l’aie dit. I do not deny that I said it.

Je ne doute pas qu’il ne vienne. I do not doubt that he will come.

Ne désespérez pas que ce moyen ne vous réussisse. Do not despair but this means may succeed for you.

Vous ne sauriez disconvenir qu’il ne vous ait parlé (Acad.). You could not deny that he has spoken to you.

Note.—This rule includes expressions equivalent to denial, though not such in form, and the rare phrases *il tient à*, ‘it depends on;’ and *il s’en faut*, ‘there is wanting’ :

À quoi tient-il que nous ne partions (Acad.). On what does it depend that we should depart ?

Il ne tenait pas à lui qu’on n’oubliât ses victoires. It is not his fault if one forgets his victories.

Peu s’en est fallu que je ne vinsse (Acad.). It lacked but little of my coming.

Il ne s’en faut presque rien qu’il ne soit aussi grand que son frère. He lacks (it lacks to him) almost nothing of being as tall as his brother. (Compare the Latin, *non multum abest quin*).

Il était impossible qu’il n’y eût réussi (Montesquieu). It was impossible that he should succeed.

Ce n’est pas que je ne convienne, &c. It is not because I consent, &c.

Note 2.—If *pas* is used in expressions of fear, &c., the meaning is reversed :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas. I fear that he is not coming.

Note 3.—Expressions of denial, doubt, or despair may be used affirmatively without *ne*. Negatively or interrogatively used they require *ne*, and affirmatively used they frequently are followed by it. See Ex. 2.

Exceptions.—An Infinitive in the dependent clause does not, of course, require *ne* :

Il craint d'être importun (Acad.). He fears being importunate.

Bientôt ils défendront de donner à Thémis ni bandeau ni balance (Boileau). Soon they will forbid to give to Justice either bandage or scales.

Sometimes, however, *ne* is used with a completing word :

Il lui défendit de ne jamais se présenter devant lui. He forbade him ever to appear before him.

Ex. 2.—Sometimes *ne* is omitted after an expression of fear in a question which implies a negative answer :

Peut-on craindre que la terre manque aux hommes ? (Fénelon). Can any one fear that the earth will not be large enough for man ? (No !)

Ex. 3.—Sometimes also *ne* is omitted after expressions of denial to denote an unquestioned fact :

Personne ne nie qu'il y a un Dieu. No one denies that there is a God.

Il n'y a pas de doute que je lui conseille, &c. There is no doubt that I advise him, &c.

2. *Ne* is required after *il y a que, depuis que, avant que,* and the like, denoting time in the sense of 'until' or 'since ;' after *à moins que, quoique, sans que,* and the like, in the sense of 'unless' or 'although ;' and after *aucun, jamais, nul, plus, nullement, rien,* and the like, denoting a universal negative statement :

Depuis que je ne vous ai vu. Since I have seen you.

Plus que je ne devais. More than I ought.

Sans que son visage exprimât, without his face expressing.

Nul ne peut être heureux. None can be happy.

Personne n'aime à recevoir des conseils. No one likes to receive advice.

Il y a six mois que je ne lui parle pas. It is six months since I have spoken to him.

Je ne le connais pas plus que vous ne le connaissez (Acad.). I don't know him any more than you do.

Note.—This use of *ne* may be explained by translating *que* separately. 'It is a year that I have not seen you,' &c. Compare Sec. 194, 4.

PREPOSITIONS.

197. Prepositions govern Nouns and Pronouns, as in English. Few require special remark :

1. Many phrases, formed by combining *de* or *à* with other words, are treated as simple words and called prepositions :

Au dessus de, above.

À côté de, beside.

Auprès de, near.

Ensuite de, after.

Au delà de, beyond.

Vis-à-vis de, opposite.

2. Prepositions are regularly repeated with each word which they govern :

Dans la paix et dans la guerre.

3. No preposition is used before the day of the week or month, or the hour of the day :

Il viendra jeudi. He will come Thursday.

4. The preposition is also omitted often with expressions of price :

Dix sous la livre. At ten sous a pound.

5. **En** is used with the Present Participle to denote a close connection between two events, and is often best translated by 'whilst,' or the like. See Sec. on Pres. Part.

En creusant les fondemens, on trouva un squelette. While digging, etc.

6. Before the name of a country or province **en** means both 'to' and 'in;' before the name of a city or town **à** means both 'to' and 'in':

Elle est allée en France. She is gone to France.

Avez-vous des amis à Paris? Have you friends in Paris?

Il réside en Californie.

7. In the following phrases **à** is always used:

À la campagne, to or in the country.

À la chasse, a-hunting, to or in the chase.

À l'école, to, at, or in school.

À l'église, to, at, or in church.

Au marché, to, at, or in the market.

À la maison, home, or at home.

À la pêche, a-fishing, to fish.

À la ville, to, at, or in the city.

8. The agent of a passive verb is generally expressed with **de** or **par**, **de** for mental actions or sentiments, and **par** for outward actions:

Il est aimé de tout le monde.

Il fut tué par les soldats.

9. **Pour** generally accompanies the Infinitive denoting purpose:

Je suis venu pour vous voir.

10. **Chez** with the name of a person or with a personal pronoun, is used for 'home,' 'at home,' or 'at the house of':

Monsieur S. est chez lui. Mr. S. is at home.

Nous fûmes chez Mme. B. We were at Mrs. B.'s.

CONJUNCTIONS.

198. Connective Words follow, for the most part, the same usage as the corresponding English words. A few require special notice:

1. **Si**, 'if,' elides its vowel only before **il** and **ils**; it does not require the Subjunctive.

2. **Que**, 'that,' must be repeated with each clause which it affects, and can never be omitted. It is used in the place of other conjunctions, even of **si**, to avoid repetition. **Que** is also used elliptically in the third person of the Imperative, and in some common phrases :

Que le diable m'emporte si, &c. May the devil carry me off if, &c. (I wish that he may).

Moi, que j'eusse une âme si traîtresse! I! (impossible) that I should have a soul so base.

Je crois que oui. I think (I will answer) yes.

Je gage que non. I wager (that it is) not.

CATALOGUE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

COMPOUNDS of obvious formation, like **a-battre**, **ad-joindre**, **ad-mettre**, &c., are not given, but the simple verbs are found in their places, **battre**, **joindre**, &c.

199.—Irregular, Defective, and Peculiar Verbs.

ABSOUUDRE, 'absolve,' Lat. *solvere*.

INDIC. Pres. **absous, absous, absout**,
absolvons, absolvez, absolvent.

Fut. **absoudrai.** Pret. wanting.

SUBJ. Pres. **absolve, absolves, absolve**,
absolvions, absolviez, absolvent.

Pret. wanting.

PART. Pres. **absolvant**; Perf. **absous**, fem. **absoute**.

S'ABSTENIR, 'abstain.' Like **tenir**.

ABSTRAIRE, 'abstract.' Like **traire**. Seldom used.

Faire abstraction de is preferred.

ACCROÎTRE, 'increase.' Like **croître**, but Perf. Part. **accru** (not circumflexed).

ACQUÉRIR, 'acquire;' *querir*, Lat. *quærere*.

INDIC. Pres. **acquiens, acquiers, acquiert**,
acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.

Fut. **acquerrai**; Pret. **acquis**.

SUBJ. Pres. **acquiène, acquières, acquière**,
acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

IMPERAT. **acquiens, acquérez.**

PART. Pres. **acquérant**; Perf. **acquis**.

ALLER, 'go,' Lat. *aditare*, *vadere*, and *ire*.

INDIC. Pres. **vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont.**

Pret. **allai**; Fut. **irai**.

SUBJ. Pres. aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.
Pret. allasse.

IMPERAT. va, aille; allez, aillent.

PART. Pres. allant; Perf. allé.

APERCEVOIR, 'perceive.' See -cevoir.

APPARTENIR, 'belong.' Like tenir.

APPRENDRE, 'learn.' Like prendre.

ASSAILLIR, 'assault.'

INDIC. Pres., SUBJ. Pres., and IMPERAT., assaille.
Pret. assaillis; Fut. assaillera.

ASSEOIR, 'set,' s'asseoir, 'sit,' Lat. sedere.

INDIC. Pres. assieds, assieds, assied,
asseyons, asseyez, asseyent.

Pret. assis; Fut. assierai.

SUBJ. Pres. asseye; Pret. assisse.

IMPERAT. assieds, asseyez.

PART. Pres. asseyant; Perf. assis.

ASTREINDRE, 'force.' Like peindre.

ATTEINDRE, 'attain.' " "

AVOIR, 'have,' Lat. habere.

INDIC. Pres. ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont.
Pret. eus; Fut. aurai.

SUBJ. Pres. aie, aies, aie, ayons, ayez, aient.
Pret. eusse.

IMPERAT. aie, ayez. PART. Pres. ayant; Perf. eu.

BATTRE, 'beat.'

INDIC. Pres. bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent.
Pret. battis; Fut. battrai.

SUBJ. Pres. batte, battes, batte, battions, battiez, &c.
Pret. battisse, battisses, battît, &c.

IMPERAT. bats, batte, battez, battent.

PART. Pres. battant; Perf. battu.

BÉNIR, 'bless.' Regular except having two Perf. Part., **béni**, 'blessed,' and **bénit**, 'consecrated.'

BOIRE, 'drink,' Lat. *bibere*.

INDIC. Pres. **bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.**

Pret. **bus**; Fut. **boirai.**

SUBJ. Pres. **boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent.**

Pret. **busse, busse, bût, &c.**

IMPERAT. **bois, boive, buvez, boivent.**

PART. Pres. **buvant**; Perf. **bu.**

BOUILLIR, 'boil,' Lat. *bullire*.

INDIC. Pres. **bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.**

Pret. **bouillis**; Fut. **bouilleraï.**

SUBJ. Pres. **bouille**; Pret. **bouillisse.**

IMPERAT. **bouille.**

PART. Pres. **bouillant**; Perf. **bouilli.** This verb is neuter.

The active is **faire bouillir.**

BRAIRE, 'bray.' Defective. Used only in Infin. and in the 3d Pers.

INDIC. Pres. **brait, braient.**

Fut. **braira, brairont.**

CONDIT. **brairait, brairaient.**

BRUIRE, 'roar.' Defective. Used only in the Infinitive and the forms—

INDIC. Pres. **bruit**; Impf. **bruyait, bruyaient.**

PART. Pres. **bruyant.** (Liable to be confused with **brouir**, regular.)

CEINDRE, 'gird,' Lat. *cingere*. Like **peindre**.

-CEVOIR. Verbs ending in **-cevoir** are from the Latin compounds of *capere*.

INDIC. Pres. **-çois, -çois, -çoit, -cevons, -cevez, -çoivent.**

Pret. **-çus, -çus, -çut, -çûmes, -çûtes, -çurent.**

Fut. **-cevrai.**

SUBJ. Pres. **-çoive, -çoives, -çoive, -cevions, -ceviez, -çoivent.**

Pret. **-çusse, -çusses, -çût, -çussions, &c.**

IMPERAT. -çoive, -cevez.

PART. Pres. -cevant; Perf. -çu.

CHOIR, 'fall,' Lat. cadere. Nearly obsolete. Used only in Infinitive and Perf. Part., **chu**. The compounds are less obsolete.

CIRCONSCRIRE, 'circumscribe.' Like **écrire**.

CIRCONVENIR, 'deceive.' Like **venir**.

CLORE, 'close,' Lat. claudere. Defective.

INDIC. Pres. **clos, clos, clôt**; no plural.

No Pret. Fut. **clorai**, &c.; CONDIT. **clorais**.

PART. Perf. **clos**. Other parts obsolete.

CONCLURE, 'conclude,' compound of **clore**.

INDIC. Pres. **conclus, conclus, conclut**,
concluons, concluez, concluent.

Pret. **conclus**, &c.; **conclûmes**, &c.

SUBJ. Pres. **conclue**, &c.; **concluions**, &c.; Pret. **conclusse**.

IMPERAT. **conclus, conclue, concluez**.

PART. Pres. **concluant**; Perf. **conclu**.

CONCEVOIR, 'conceive.' See **-cevoir**.

CONDUIRE, 'conduct,' Lat. ducere.

INDIC. Pres. **conduis**, &c.; **conduisons, conduisez, -sent**.

Pret. **conduisis**, &c., **conduisîmes**, &c.

Fut. **conduirai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **conduise**, &c., **conduisions**, &c.

Pret. **conduisisse**.

IMPERAT. **conduis, conduisez**.

PART. Pres. **conduisant**; Perf. **conduit**.

CONFIRE, 'preserve, pickle.' Like **lire**.

CONNAÎTRE, 'know,' Lat. cognoscere.

INDIC. Pres. **connais, connais, connaît**,
connaissons, connaissez, connaissent.

Pret. **connus**; Fut. **connaîtrai**, &c.

SUBJ. Pres. **connaisse**; Pret. **connusse**.

PART. Pres. **connaissant**; Perf. **connu**.

CONQUÉRIR, 'conquer,' Lat. *conquirere*. Like **acquérir**, but nearly obsolete except in Indic. Pret., Subj. Pret., and Part.

CONSTRUIRE, 'construct.' Like **conduire**.

CONTRAINdre, 'constrain,' Lat. *constringere*.

INDIC. Pres. **contrains**, &c., like **peindre**. See Sec. 153.

CONTREDIRE, 'contradict.' Like **dédire**.

COUDRE, 'sew,' Lat. *consuere*.

INDIC. Pres. **couds**, **couds**, **coud**, **cousons**, **cousez**, **cousent**.

Pret. **cousis**; Fut. **coudrai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **couse**; Pret. **cousisse**.

IMPERAT. **couds**, **cousez**.

PART. Pres. **cousant**; Perf. **cousu**.

COURIR, 'run,' Lat. *currere*.

INDIC. Pres. **cours**, **cours**, **court**, **courons**, **courez**, **courent**.

Pret. **courus**; Fut. **courrai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **coure**; Pret. **courusse**.

IMPERAT. **cours**, **courez**.

PART. Pres. **courant**; Perf. **couru**.

COUVRIR, 'cover,' Lat. *co-operire*. Like **ouvrir**.

CRAINdre, 'fear,' Lat. *tremere*. Like **peindre**.

CROIRE, 'believe,' Lat. *credere*.

INDIC. Pres. **crois**, **crois**, **croit**, **croyons**, **croyez**, **croient**.

Pret. **crus**; Imperf. **croyais**; Fut. **croirai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **croie**, &c., **croyions**, &c.; Pret. **crusse**.

IMPERAT. **crois**, **croyez**.

PART. Pres. **croyant**; Perf. **cru**.

CROÎTRE, 'grow,' Lat. *crescere*.

INDIC. Pres. **croîs**, **croîs**, **croît**, **croissons**, **croissez**, **croissent**.

Pret. **crûs**, **crûs**, **crût**, **crûmes**, **crûtes**, **crurent**.

Fut. **croîrai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **croisse**; Pret. **crusse**, or **crûsse**.

IMPERAT. **croïs, croissez.**

PART. Pres. **-croissant**; Perf. **crû, crûe, or crue.**

CUEILLIR, 'pluck,' Lat. colligere.

INDIC. Pres. **cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillons, &c.**

Pret. **cueillis**; Fut. **cueillerai.**

SUBJ. Pres. **cueille**; Pret. **cueillisse.**

IMPERAT. **cueille, cueillez.**

PART. Pres. **cueillant**; Perf. **cueilli.**

CUIRE, 'cook,' Lat. coquere. Like **nuire.**

DECEVOIR. See **-cevoir.**

DÉCHOIR, 'decay,' compound of **choir.** Defective.

INDIC. Pres. **déchois, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, -ez, -oient.**

Pret. **déchus**; Fut. **décherrai**; Imperf. wanting.

SUBJ. Pres. **déchoie**; Pret. **déchusse.**

IMPERAT. wanting; PART. Pres. wanting; Perf. **déchu.**

DÉDIRE, 'disown,' compound of **dire.** Like **dire**, except in Pres. Indic. and Imperat., which are **dédisez** (not **dédites**).

DÉTRUIRE, 'destroy,' Lat. de-struere. Like **conduire.**

DEVOIR, 'owe,' Lat. debere.

INDIC. Pres. **dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent.**

Pret. **dus**; Fut. **devrai.**

SUBJ. Pres. **doive**; Pret. **dusse.** IMPERAT. **dois, devez.**

PART. Pres. **devant**; Perf. **dû.**

DIRE, 'say,' Lat. dicere.

INDIC. Pres. **dis, dis, dit, disons, disez, dites.**

Pret. **dis**; Fut. **dirai.** IMPERAT. **dis, dites.**

SUBJ. Pres. **dise**; Pret. **disse.**

PART. Pres. **disant**; Pret. **dit.**

DISSOUDRE, 'dissolve.' Like **absoudre.**

DORMIR, 'sleep,' Lat. dormire.

INDIC. Pres. **dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment.**

Pret. **dormis**; Fut. **dormirai.** IMPERAT. **dors, dormez.**

SUBJ. Pres. **dorme**, &c., **dormions**, &c. ; Pret. **dormisse**.

PART. Pres. **dormant** ; Perf. **dormi**.

ÉCHOIR, comp. of **choir**, 'fall out.' Unipersonal.

INDIC. Pres. **échoit**, and **échoient**.

Pret. **échus** ; Fut. **écherrai**. No Imperf.

SUBJ. Pres. wanting ; Pret. **échusse**. No Imperat.

PART. Pres. **échéant** ; Perf. **echu**.

ÉCLORE, 'hatch,' Lat. *excludere*. Unipersonal.

INDIC. Pres. **éclo**t, **éclosent** ; Fut. **éclora**, **écloront**.

CONDIT. **éclorait**, **écloraient**.

SUBJ. Pres. **éclo**se, **éclosent**.

PART. Pres. **éclosant** ; Perf. **éclos**. Other parts wanting.

ÉCRIRE, 'write,' Lat. *scribere*.

INDIC. Pres. **écris**, **écris**, **écrit**, **écrivons**, **écrivez**, **écrivent**.

Pret. **écrivis** ; Fut. **écrirai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **écrive** ; Pret. **écrivisse**. IMPERAT. **écris**, **écrivez**.

PART. Pres. **écrivant** ; Perf. **écri**.

ENDUIRE, 'plaster,' Lat. *inducere*. Like **conduire**.

EMPREINDRE, 'imprint.' Like **peindre**.

ENVOYER, 'send,' Lat. *in via*.

INDIC. Pres. **envoie**, **envoies**, **envoie**, **envoyons**, **-yez**, **-ient**.

Pret. **envoyai** ; Fut. **enverrai** ; Imperf. **envoyais**.

Otherwise regular. See Sec. 151.

ÉTEINDRE, 'extinguish,' Lat. *extinguere*. Like **peindre**.

ÉTREINDRE, 'bind,' Lat. *stringere*. Like **peindre**.

EXCLURE, 'exclude,' Lat. *excludere*. Like **conclure**.

FAILLIR, 'fail, be wanting,' Lat. *fallere*. Defective.

INDIC. Pret. **faillis**. PART. Perf. **failli**.

Other parts wanting. In the sense of 'make a failure' it is regular.

FAIRE, 'do,' Lat. *facere*.

INDIC. Pres. **fais**, **fais**, **fait**, **faisons**, **faisez**, **font** (25, 4).

INDIC. Pret. **fis** ; Fut. **ferai** ; Imperf. **faisais**.

SUBJ. Pres. **fasse** ; Pret. **fisse**.

PART. Pres. **faisant** ; Perf. **fait**. IMPERAT. **fais, faites**.

FALLOIR, 'be necessary,' Lat. fallere. Unipersonal.

INDIC. Pres. **faut** (no pl.) ; Imperf. **fallait** ; Fut. **faudra**.
Pret. **fallut**.

SUBJ. Pres. **faille** ; Pret. **fallût**.

PART. Pres. wanting ; Perf. **fallu**.

FEINDRE, 'feign,' Lat. fingere. Like **peindre**.

FÉRIR, 'strike,' Lat. ferire ; used only in **sans coup férir**, without a blow struck.

FLEURIR, 'blossom.' Regular when used literally. Figuratively used, Indic. Imperf. **florissait** ; Pres. Part. **florissant**.

FRIRE, 'fry,' Lat. frigere. Defective. Only in Indic. Pres. **fris, fris, frit** ; Fut. **frirai** ; Cond. **frirais** ; Imperat. **fris** ; Part. Perf. **frit**.

FUIR, 'flee,' Lat. fugere.

INDIC. Pres. **fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient**.

Pret. **fuis** ; Imperf. **fuyais** ; Fut. **fuirai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **fuie** ; Pret. **fuisse**.

IMPERAT. **fuis, fuites**.

PART. Pres. **fuyant** ; Perf. **fui**.

GÉSIR, 'lie,' Lat. jacere. Defective.

INDIC. Pres. **gît, gisons, gisez, gisent**.

Imperf. **gisait** ; PART. Pres. **gisant**.

Ci-gît, 'here lies,' is used on tomb-stones.

HAÏR, 'hate,' regular except diæresis.

INDIC. Pres. **hais** ; Pret. **haïs**. PART. Pres. **haï**.

INDUIRE, 'infer,' Lat. inducere. Like **conduire**.

INSCRIRE, 'inscribe.' Like **écrire**.

INSTRUIRE, 'instruct.' Like **conduire**.

INTERDIRE, 'interdict.' Like *dédire*.

INTRODUIRE, 'introduce.' Like *conduire*.

ISSIR, 'issue,' Lat. *exire*. Participles *issant*, *issu*.
Rest obsolete.

LIRE, 'read,' Lat. *legere*.

INDIC. Pres. *lis*, *lis*, *lit*, *lisons*, *lisez*, *lisent*.

Pret. *lus*; Fut. *lirai*; Imperf. *lisais*.

SUBJ. Pres. *lise*; Pret. *lusse*.

IMPERAT. *lis*, *lisez* PART. Pres. *lisant*; Perf. *lu*.

LUIRE, 'shine,' Lat. *lucere*. Like *conduire*, except
Perf. Part. *lui*; Pret. Indic. and Subj. are wanting.

MAUDIRE, 'curse,' Lat. *maledicere*.

INDIC. Pres. *maudis*, *-dis*, *-dit*, *-dissons*, *-ssez*, *-ssent*.

Pret. *maudis*; Fut. *maudirai*; Imperf. *maudissais*.

SUBJ. Pres. *maudisse*, *-isses*, *maudisse*; *maudissions*, &c.

Pret. *maudisse*, *maudisses*, *maudît*, *maudissions*, &c.

PART. Pres. *maudissant*; Perf. *maudit*.

MENTIR, 'lie,' Lat. *mentire*.

INDIC. Pres. *mens*, *mens*, *ment*, *mentons*, *mentez*, *mentent*.

Pret. *mentis*; Fut. *mentirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *mente*; Pret. *mentisse*. IMPERAT. *mens*, *-tez*.

PART. Pres. *mentant*; Perf. *menti*.

METTRE, 'place,' Lat. *mittere*.

INDIC. Pres. *mets*, *mets*, *met*, *mettons*, *mettez*, *mettent*.

Pret. *mis*; Fut. *mettrai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *mette*; Pret. *misse*.

IMPERAT. *mets*, *mettez*.

PART. Pres. *mettant*; Perf. *mis*.

MOUDRE, 'grind,' Lat. *molere*.

INDIC. Pres. *mouds*, *mouds*, *moud*, *moulons*, *-lez*, *moulent*.

Pret. *moulus*; Fut. *moudrai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *moule*; Pret. *moulusse*.

PART. Pres. *moulant*; Perf. *moulu*. IMPERAT. *mouds*, *-lez*.

MOURIR, 'die,' Lat. moriri.

INDIC. Pres. meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, -rez, meurent.
Pret. mourus; Fut. mourrai.

SUBJ. Pres. meure; Pret. mourusse.

PART. Pres. mourant; Perf. mort. IMPERAT. meurs, mourez.

MOUVOIR, 'move,' Lat. movere.

INDIC. Pres. meus, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.
Pret. mus; Fut. mouvrai.

SUBJ. Pres. meuve; Pret. musse.

PART. Pres. mouvant; Perf. mu. IMPERAT. meus, mouvez.

NAÎTRE, 'be born,' Lat. nasci, natus.

INDIC. Pres. nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent.
Pret. naquis; Fut. naîtrai.

SUBJ. Pres. naisse; Pret. naquisse.

PART. Pres. naissant; Perf. né.

NUIRE, 'injure,' Lat. nocere.

INDIC. Pres. nuis, nuis, nuit, nuisons, nuisez, nuisent.
Like conduire, except Part. Perf. nui (not nuit).

OFFRIR, 'offer,' Lat. offere. Like ouvrir.

OINDRE, 'anoint,' Lat. ungere. Like peindre.

OUIR, 'hear,' Lat. audire. Only in Indic. Pret. ouïs;
Subj. Pret. ouisse; and Part. Perf. ouï.

OUVRIR, 'open,' Lat. operire.

INDIC. Pres. ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, &c.
Pret. ouvris; Fut. ouvrirai.

SUBJ. Pres. ouvre; Pret. ouvrisse.

PART. Pres. ouvrant; Perf. ouvert. IMPERAT. ouvre, -rez.

PAÎTRE, 'graze,' Lat. pascere. Like naître, except that the Indic. Pret. and Subj. Pret. are wanting, and the Part. Perf. is pu (not pait).

PARAÎTRE, 'appear,' Lat. parere. Like connaître.

PARTIR, 'set out,' Lat. partire.

INDIC. Pres. pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent.

INDIC. Pret. *partis*; Fut. *partirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *parte*; Pret. *partisse*.

IMPERAT. *pars, partez*.

PART. Pres. *partant*; Perf. *parti*.

PEINDRE, 'paint,' Lat. *pingere*.

INDIC. Pres. *peins, peins, peint, peignons, -gnez, -gnent*.

Pret. *peignis*; Fut. *peindrai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *peigne*; Pret. *peignisse*.

PART. Pres. *peignant*; Perf. *peint*.

IMPERAT. *peins, peignez*.

PLAINDRE, 'pity,' Lat. *plangere*. Like *peindre*.

PLAIRE, 'please,' Lat. *placere*.

INDIC. Pres. *plais, plais, plait, plaisons, plaisez, plaisent*.

Pret. *plus*; Fut. *plairai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *plaise*; Pret. *plusse*.

PART. Pres. *plaisant*; Perf. *plu*.

IMPERAT. *plais, plaisez*.

PLEUVOIR, 'rain,' Lat. *pluere*. Unipersonal.

INDIC. Pres. *pleut*; Pret. *plut*; Imperf. *pleuvait*.

PART. Pres. *pleuvant*; Perf. *plû*.

POINDRE, 'dawn,' Lat. *pungere*. Used only in Infinitive and Indic. Fut.

POINDRE, 'to sting,' is regular, like *craindre*.

POUVOIR, 'be able,' Lat. *potere, posse*.

INDIC. Pres. *puis or peux, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent*.

Pret. *pus*; Fut. *pourrai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *puisse*; Pret. *pusse, pusse, pût, &c.*

PART. Pres. *pouvant*; Perf. *pu*.

POURVOIR, 'provide,' Lat. *providere*.

INDIC. Pres. *pourvois, -vois, -voit, -voyons, -voyez, -voient*.

Pret. *pourvus*; Fut. *pourvoirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *pourvoie*; Pret. *pourvusse*.

PART. Pres. **pourvoyant** ; Perf. **pourvu**.

IMPERAT. **pourvoie, pourvoyez**.

PRÉDIRE, 'foretell.' Like **médire**.

PRENDRE, 'take,' Lat. *prehendere*

INDIC. Pres. **prends, prends, prend, prenons, -nez, prennent**.

Pret. **pris** ; Fut. **prendrai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **prenne** ; Pret. **prisse**.

PART. Pres. **prenant** ; Perf. **pris**. IMPERAT. **prends, prenez**.

PRÉSCRIRE, 'prescribe.' Like **écrire**.

PRÉVALOIR, 'prevail,' Lat. *prævalere*. Like **valoir**, except the Subj. Pres. **prévale** (not **prevaille**).

PRÉVOIR, 'foresee.' Like **pourvoir**, except Indic. Pret. **prévis**.

PRODUIRE, 'produce,' Lat. *producere*. Like **conduire**.

PROSCRIRE, 'proscribe.' Like **écrire**.

QUÉRIR, 'fetch,' Lat. *quærere*. Used only in Infinitive. See compounds, **acquérir**, &c.

RECROÎTRE, 'grow again.' Like **croître**.

RÉDUIRE, 'reduce,' Lat. *reducere*. Like **conduire**.

REPARTIR, 'set out again.' Like **partir**. **Répartir**, 'distribute,' is regular.

REQUÉRIR, 'require.' Like **acquérir**.

RÉSOUUDRE, 'resolve,' Lat. *resolvere*. Like **absoudre**, except Part. Perf. **résolu**. **Résous** is also used, but has no feminine, and means 'separated,' 'dissolved.'

RESTREINDRE, 'restrain,' Lat. *restringere*. Like **peindre**.

RIRE, 'laugh,' Lat. *ridere*.

INDIC. Pres. **ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient**.

Pret. **ris** ; Fut. **rirai**.

SUBJ. Pres. **rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, riiient**.

Pret. **risse**.

PART. Pres. **riant** ; Perf. **ri**. IMPERAT. **rie, riez**.

ROMPRE, 'break,' Lat. rumpere. Like *vendre*. Retains the stem *romp-* throughout, and is really regular.

SAILLIR, 'project,' Lat. salire. Unipersonal.

INDIC. Pres. *saille, saillent*. Imperf. *saillait, saillaient*.

Fut. *saillera, -ront*. CONDIT. *saillerais, -aient*.

Other tenses obsolete. In the meaning 'gush out,' this verb is regular though unipersonal.

SAVOIR, 'know,' Lat. sapere.

INDIC. Pres. *sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent*.

Pret. *sus*; Fut. *saurai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *sache*; Pret. *susse*.

PART. Pres. *sachant*; Perf. *su*. IMPERAT. *sache, sachez*.

SÉDUIRE, 'seduce,' Lat. seducere. Like *conduire*.

SENTIR, 'feel, smell,' Lat. sentire.

INDIC. Pres. *sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent*.

Pret. *sentis*; Fut. *sentirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *sente*; Pret. *sentisse*.

PART. Pres. *sentant*; Perf. *senti*.

IMPERAT. *sens, sentez*.

SEOIR, 'fit, become,' Lat. sedere. Unipersonal. Used only in Indic. Pres. *sied, siéent*; Fut. *siéra, siéront*; Condit. *siérait, -aient*; Imperf. *seyait*; Part. Pres. *seyant*.

In the meaning 'to sit,' this verb has only the Infinitive and two Participles, *séant* and *sis*, in use. See compounds *asseoir*, &c.

SERVIR, 'serve,' Lat. servire.

INDIC. Pres. *sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent*.

Pret. *servis*; Fut. *servirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *serve*; Pret. *servisse*.

PART. Pres. *servant*; Perf. *servi*. IMPERAT. *sers, servez*.

SORTIR, 'go out,' Lat. sortiri.

INDIC. Pres. *sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent*.

Other parts like *servir*.

SOUFFRIR, 'suffer,' Lat. sufferre. Like *ouvrir*.

SOURDRE, 'spring up' (of water), Lat. surgere. Only used in Indic. Pres. 3d pers. *sourd*, and Infinitive. The Perf. Part., *source*, has become a noun.

SOUSCRIRE, 'subscribe.' Like *écrire*.

SUFFIRE, 'suffice,' Lat. sufficere.

INDIC. Pres. *suffis, suffis, suffit, suffisons, suffisez, suffisent*.

Pret. *suffis*; Fut. *suffirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *suffise*; Pret. *suffisse*.

PART. Pres. *suffisant*; Perf. *suffi*.

IMPERAT. *suffis, suffisez*.

SUIVRE, 'follow,' Lat. sequi.

INDIC. Pres. *suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent*.

Pret. *suivis*; Fut. *suivrai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *suive*; Pret. *suivisse*.

PART. Pres. *suivant*; Perf. *suivi*. IMPERAT. *suis, suivez*.

SURSEOIR, 'supersede' (legal term).

INDIC. Pres. *sursois, sursois, sursoit, sursoyons, -yez, -oient*.

Pret. *sursis*; Fut. *surseoirai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *sursoie*; Pret. *sursisse*.

PART. Pres. *sursoyant*; Perf. *sursis*.

IMPERAT. *sursois, sursoyez*.

TAIRE, 'be silent, conceal,' Lat. tacere. Like *plaire*.

Pres. *tais, taisons, &c.*

TEINDRE, 'dye,' Lat. tingere. Like *peindre*.

TENIR, 'hold,' Lat. tenere. Like *venir*.

TRADUIRE, 'translate,' Lat. traducere. Like *conduire*.

TRAIRE, 'milk,' Lat. trahere.

INDIC. Pres. *trais, traïs, trait, trayons, trayez, traient*.

Pret. *wanting*; Fut. *trairai*.

SUBJ. Pres. *traie*; Pret. *wanting*.

PART. Pres. *trayant*; Perf. *trait*.

IMPERAT. *trais, trayez*.

TRANSCRIRE, 'transcribe.' Like écrire.

TRESSAILLIR, 'start, tremble,' Lat. salire. Like assaillir, but Fut. and Condit. end in -erai, -erais, or -irai, -irais.

VAINCRE, 'conquer,' Lat. vincere.

INDIC. Pres. vaincs, vaincs, vainc, vainquons, -quez, -quent.

Pret. vainquis; Fut. vaincrai.

SUBJ. Pres. vainque; Pret. vainquisse.

PART. Pres. vainquant; Perf. vaincu.

IMPERAT. vaincs, vainquez.

VALOIR, 'be worth,' Lat. valere.

INDIC. Pres. vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent.

Pret. valus; Fut. vaudrai.

SUBJ. Pres. vaille; Pret. valusse.

PART. Pres. valant; Perf. valu.

IMPERAT. vaux, valez.

VENIR, 'come,' Lat. venire.

INDIC. Pres. viens, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent.

Pret. vins; Fut. viendrai.

SUBJ. Pres. vienne; Pret. vinsse.

IMPERAT. viens, venez.

VÊTIR, 'clothe,' Lat. vestire.

INDIC. Pres. vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtions, vêtez, vêtent.

Pret. vêtis; Fut. vêtirai.

SUBJ. Pres. vête; Pret. vêtisse.

PART. Pres. vêtant; Perf. vêtu.

IMPERAT. vêts, vêtez.

VIVRE, 'live,' Lat. vivere.

INDIC. Pres. vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent.

Pret. vécu; Fut. vivrai.

SUBJ. Pres. vive; Pret. vécusse.

PART. Pres. vivant; Perf. vécu. IMPERAT. vis, vivez.

VOIR, 'see,' Lat. videre.

INDIC. Pres. **vois, vous, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.**

Pret. **vis**; Fut. **verrai.**

SUBJ. Pres. **voie**; Pret. **visse.**

PART. Pres. **voyant**; Perf. **vu.** IMPERAT. **vois, voyez.**

VOULOIR, 'will, be willing,' Lat. volo, velle.

INDIC. Pres. **veux, vous, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.**

Pret. **voulus**; Fut. **voudrai.**

SUBJ. Pres. **veuille**; Pret. **voulusse.**

PART. Pres. **voulant**; Perf. **voulu.**

IMPERAT. **veux, voulez.**

In the sense of 'be so good as,' 'deign,' the Imperat. is **veuille** and **veuillez** (really Subjunctive).

PART II.—EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

Secs. 61–2.—The Definite Article.

1. Les chats sont les ennemis des souris. 2. Le sommeil est l'image de la mort. 3. Les chiens sont les plus fidèles des animaux. 4. L'oiseau est sur le toit. 5. Je suis le onzième de ma classe. 6. Où est le chemin du village au château. 7. Où est le jardin du frère? 8. Le chapeau du monsieur est ici, sur le table. 9. Les conseils des mères aux filles. 10. La ressemblance du singe à l'homme. 11. Voilà les portraits du frère, de la sœur, et des cousins. 12. Donnez le parapluie au monsieur, et l'ombrelle à la dame.

Vocabulary.*

je suis, I am.	nous sommes, we are.	elle est, she, it, is.
tu es, thou art.	vous êtes, you are.	elles sont, they are.
il est, he, it, is.	ils sont, they are.	
le chat, the cat.	ma, my.	le jardin, the garden.
la souris, the mouse.	où, where.	le chapeau, the hat.
le sommeil, sleep.	voilà, here is, are.	le conseil, advice.
le chien, the dog.	donnez, give.	la fille, the daughter.
animaux, animals.	le parapluie, the umbrella.	le singe, the monkey.
le toit, the roof.	l'ombrelle, the parasol.	la sœur, the sister.
le chemin, the road.	le village, the village.	la dame, the lady.
les plus fidèles, the most faithful.		le monsieur, the gentleman.
sur, upon.		

EXERCISE 2.

Secs. 63–4.—Definite Article continued.

1. Le sommeil est l'image de la mort. 2. La mort est le passage de la vie à l'immortalité. 3. Mars est le dieu de la guerre. 4. Le vice est odieux. 5. La politesse est souvent une vertu de mine et de parade (Mirabeau). 6. Il règne de trésors, de sceptres, de palais. 7. Londres est

* Words whose meaning is given in the text of the grammar in the present sections, and words exactly alike in both languages, are not given.



en feu. 8. Ce vaisseau arrive de la Jamaïque. 9. Le beurre est bien cher à vingt sous la livre. 10. Le cheval est bien utile à l'homme. 11. Voilà les gants de la dame, sur la chaise. 12. Vous avez une grande admiration pour le Dante.

Vocabulary.

j'ai, I have.	nous avons, we have.	ils ont, they have.
tu as, thou hast.	vous avez, you have.	elles ont, they have.
il a, he, it, has.	avez-vous? have you?	elle a, she, it, has.
la vie, life.	odieux, odious.	les trésors, treasures.
le dieu, the god.	il rêve, he dreams.	les palais, palaces.
la guerre, war.	Londres, London.	le feu, fire.
la politesse, politeness.	il arrive, he comes.	le vaisseau, the vessel.
la mine, pretence.	cher, dear.	le beurre, butter.
le sou, half-penny.	vingt, twenty.	la livre, the pound.
le gant, the glove.	utile, useful.	la chaise, the chair.
le cheval, the horse.	grande, great.	
	pour, for.	

English into French.

1. One bird is on the tree. 2. Here is the history of Christianity. 3. The man is on the roof. 4. Here is the mother's advice. 5. Where are the gentleman's gloves? 6. Have you my chair? 7. He is useful to men. 8. We have twenty pounds of butter.

EXERCISE 3.

Secs. 65-6.—Indefinite Article.

1. Nous avons le Misanthrope, comédie par Molière. 2. Votre ami est homme de cœur. 3. Ils sont à Rome, ville d'Italie. 4. J'ai un oncle qui est un très-bon avocat. 5. Votre oncle, est-il medecin? 6. Non, il est journaliste. 7. Quel est le titre de ce livre? Histoire de Russie. 8. Faire une grande fortune n'est pas chose facile. 9. Nous allons rendre une courte visite. 10. Nous avons un verre et une bouteille de bière. 11. Le beau n'est pas toujours l'utile. 12. Achille (Sec. 40), âme de feu, dont la rage est d'un tigre (Delille). 13. Une femme prudente est la source des biens.

Vocabulary.

est-il ? is he ?		a-t-il ? has he ?
est-elle ? is she ?		a-t-elle ? has she ?
sont-ils ? are they ?		ont ils ? have they ?
<hr/>		<hr/>
votre, your.	le titre, title.	le verre, glass.
par, by.	ne—pas, not.	la bière, beer.
très, very.	le livre, book.	rendre, to pay, render.
non, not.	l'histoire, history.	toujours, always.
bon, good.	faire, to make.	dont, of which, whose.
quel, what ?	ce, this, that.	la rage, anger, rage.
la ville, city.	facile, easy.	courte, short.
le cœur, heart, cour- age.	nous allons, we are going.	mais, but.
l'avocat, lawyer.	la chose, thing.	beau, beautiful.
le medecin, doctor.	la bouteille, bottle.	l'âme, soul.
		le tigre, tiger.

English into French.

1. The child has your book. 2. We are at Berlin, a city of Prussia (la Prusse). 3. We are going to make our fortune. 4. Is your brother a lawyer? 5. No, sir, but your cousin is a very good lawyer. 6. He has a useful horse. 7. What (quelle) comedy of Molière has he? 8. We are men of courage. Are they men of courage? 9. Has she a glass of beer? He has a bottle of beer. 10. Has Achilles a soul of fire? 11. No, but this soul has the violence (rage) of a tiger.

[NOTE.—The teacher may extend these exercises indefinitely by changing the combinations of words already known.]

EXERCISE 4.

Secs. 67-8.—Partitive Expressions.

1. Ma tante, a-t-elle du pain? 2. Le roi a de l'or et de l'argent. 3. A-t-il de bon café? 4. Il a une carte de la France. 5. L'enfant, a-t-il des plumes? 6. S'il y a des fleurs dans la vie, il y a aussi bien des épines. 7. Donnez-moi un verre d'eau fraîche. 8. Voici d'excellent thé. 9. Quel genre de maladie votre frère a-t-il? 10. Je n'ai encore mangé ni des fraises ni des groseilles de votre jardin, madame. 11. La lèpre est un genre de maladie

contre laquelle la science humaine ne peut rien. 12. Y a-t-il du monde dans les rues? 13. Elle a de l'esprit comme un ange. 14. Je ne prends pas de la peine pour rien. 15. L'ambition n'a guère de limites.

Vocabulary.

il y a, there is, are.
y a-t-il? is there?
donnez-moi, give me.
ai mangé, have eaten.
ni—ni, neither—nor.
contre, against.
laquelle, which.
humaine, human.
ne peut, cannot do.
rien, nothing.
comme, like.
pour, for.
la tante, aunt.
le pain, bread.

l'or, gold.
l'argent, silver.
l'eau, water.
le thé, tea.
le genre, kind, genus.
la fraise, strawberry.
la groseille, goose-
berry.
la rue, street.
dans, in.
l'ange, angel.
je prends, I take.
guère, scarcely.

la carte, map.
un enfant, a child.
une épine, a thorn.
la fleur, flower.
aussi, also.
fraîche, fresh.
encore, yet, still.
le jardin, garden.
la lèpre, leprosy.
le monde, world, peo-
ple.
l'esprit, wit, mind.
la peine, trouble.

English into French.

1. Have you any bread? No, madam, but I have a pound of coffee. 2. Give me some beer. 3. I have no glass. 4. My aunt has some money. 5. I have neither silver nor iron. 6. Give me some strawberries. 7. Has she any gooseberries? 8. Here are some maps, and some flowers. 9. There are people in the garden. 10. I take trouble for nothing.

EXERCISE 5.

Secs. 69-70.—Gender of Nouns.

1. L'orateur a beaucoup d'amis. 2. Le garçon a un bon chien et un mauvais cheval. 3. Le mois de mai est un mois du printemps. 4. Le plaisir est souvent l'ennemi de la raison. 5. Une chêne a beaucoup de feuilles. 6. Le blanc et le noir sont deux couleurs opposées. 7. Il y a un juif à la porte. 8. Il n'y a pas de lions dans l'Amérique. 9. Je suis un malheureux Français. 10. Êtes-vous fils de l'empereur? 11. Êtes-vous le fils de l'em-

péreur ? 12. Y a-t-il du feu dans la maison ? 13. Avez-vous le mal de dents ? 14. Non, monsieur, mais j'ai le mal de tête. 15. Il est dangereux de conseiller les grands. 16. Ces pères de l'église sont non-seulement des professeurs éloquents (Sec. 76, N.), mais encore des hommes politiques. .

Vocabulary.

il n'y a pas, there is not, are not.	le chien, the dog.
un orateur, an orator.	le mois, the month
beaucoup de, much, many.	le plaisir, pleasure.
le printemps, Spring.	la feuille, the leaf.
la couleur, color.	blanc, white.
l'empéreur, emperor.	dans, in.
malheureux, unhappy.	noir, black.
êtes-vous ? are you ?	deux, two.
opposé, opposite.	le lion, the lion.
le juif, the Jew.	le fils, the son.
la porte, the door.	le feu, fire.
la maison, the house.	le dent, the tooth.
le tête, the head.	le mal, evil, pain.
dangereux, dangerous.	une église, a church.
conseiller, to advise.	le professeur, professor.
seulement, only.	encore, more, still.
le garçon, the boy.	politique, wise, politic.

English into French.

1. Are you the son of the orator ? 2. Is he the unfortunate Jew ? 3. What kind of leaves have you ? 4. Has the emperor eaten some poison ? 5. Your brother is at the door. 6. Are there any oaks in France ? 7. There are many dogs and horses in London. 8. There are some Jews in the garden.

EXERCISE 6.

Sec. 71.—Gender of Nouns continued.

1. La reine a une colombe. 2. Ma sœur a une rose, une pomme, et une lis (Sec. 53, 3. 3. La corruption du cœur est souvent la cause de la corruption des mœurs. 4. Il n'y a pas de poisson dans cette rivière. 5. Donnez cela à

l'homme, à la femme, aux filles, et aux garçons. 6. Y a-t-il beaucoup de monde dans la rue? 7. L'eau de la fontaine du pré, est-elle bien bonne? 8. Ma sœur a de la jalousie et de la paresse aussi. 9. Le chapeau du monsieur est ici, sur une table. 10. Voici d'excellent fromage. 11. Où est le chemin du château au village? 12. Voici la route. 13. De toutes les passions que les hommes opposent à la vérité, la jalousie est la plus dangereuse.

Vocabulary.

la sœur, sister.	souvent, often.	la fille, the girl.
la pomme, apple.	cette, this.	le garçon, the boy.
la lis, lily.	cela, that.	l'eau, water.
le cœur, heart.	bien, very, well.	le pré, meadow.
les mœurs, manners.	bonne, good, fine.	la route, the way.
le poisson, fish.	ici, here.	la vérité, truth.
la rivière, stream.	sur, upon, on.	la jalousie, jealousy.
la femme, woman.	où, where.	la fontaine, the spring.
la paresse, idleness.	opposé, oppose.	la sœur, the sister.
le fromage, cheese.	la plus, the most.	que, that, which.

English into French.

1. Where is your candle? 2. Where is the gentleman's hat? 3. It is in the meadow near (*près de*) the spring. 4. Is truth often very dangerous? 5. There is no jealousy in this woman's heart. 6. Are there any fish in the house? 7. The girl's sister has some excellent cheese.

EXERCISE 7.

Secs. 72-75.—Gender of Nouns continued.

1. Voici une orpheline pauvre. 2. Y a-t-il des chrétiens en Afrique? 3. Une menteuse, souvent enchanteresse, est toujours une vraie pécheresse. 4. L'aigle est le plus fier des oiseaux qui volent dans l'air. 5. Combien d'exemples avez-vous dans votre leçon aujourd'hui? 6. Il n'y a que trois dans mon livre. 7. Sur quel page sont-ils? 8. Allons à la poste avec les lettres de la poëtesse. 9. N'avez-vous pas un souris pour moi? 10. Oui, monsieur, mais mon voile est très-épais. 11. Cette histoire n'est qu'un coq-à-l'âne. Elle n'est pas vraie. 12. L'honneur

et la justice sont entièrement bannis de ce monde. 13. Le flambeau de la critique ne doit pas brûler, mais éclairer.

Vocabulary.

un orphelin, orphan.	pauvre, poor.	mais, but.
le chrétien, Christian.	toujours, always.	épais, thick.
le menteur, liar.	le plus, the most.	vraie, true.
l'enchanteur, enchan- ter.	fier, proud.	entièrement, wholly.
le pécheur, sinner.	volent, fly.	bannis, banished.
l'oiseau, bird.	qui, who, which.	doit, ought.
l'air, the air.	combien, how.	brûler, to burn.
le leçon, lesson.	aujourd'hui, to-day.	éclairer, to illumi- nate.
le lettre, letter.	ne—que, only.	l'honneur, honor.
le souris, the smile.	trois, three.	le flambeau, torch.
le voile, the veil.	mon, my.	la critique, criticism.
coq-à-l'âne, cock-and- bull story.	allons, let us go.	le monde, world.
	avec, with.	l'histoire, story.
	oui, yes.	

English into French.

1. The orphan-boy has a she-bear for his friend. 2. Is there often a princess who is also (**aussi**) a poetess? 3. I have a smile for you, sir, but you have not any beard. 4. There is a mouse in my uncle's house. 5. Where is the tower? 6. The alder-tree has many leaves. 7. Where is the sentinel? 8. He is in the king's garden, where there is an intruder.

EXERCISE 3.

Secs. 76-7.—Number of Nouns.

1. La vache aime les choux. 2. Avez-vous du feu dans votre maison. 3. Combien de fils, votre ami a-t-il? 4. Les yeux de Dieu sont partout. 5. Je n'aime pas le détail. 6. Les chevaux sont très-utiles. 7. Vous avez trois églises dans votre ville. 8. Les vents du midi sont chauds. 9. Les étoiles sont l'ornement des cieux. 10. J'ai vu le beau ciel d'Italie. 11. Voici du bétail. Nos bestiaux sont sur la montagne. 12. Dieu a l'œil partout. 13. Nous avons vu les funérailles d'une dame très-riche. 14. Il y a peu de différence entre les mœurs anglaises et les américaines.

15. J'ai vu les châteaux et les palais. 16. La fierté d'un grand nom rend ses maux plus perçans. 17. Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes.

Vocabulary.

j'aime, I like (love).	il aime, he loves.	aime-t-il? does he love?
tu aimes, thou lovest.	elle aime, she loves.	aime-t-elle? does she love?
la vache, the cow.	le vent, wind.	partout, everywhere.
le chou, cabbage.	le ciel, heaven, sky.	riche, rich.
le feu, fire.	le bétail, cattle.	très, very.
un ami, a friend.	la montagne, mountain.	peu, little.
un œil, an eye.	les funérailles, funeral.	entre, between.
Dieu, God.	la dame, lady.	vu, seen.
le détail, details.	les mœurs, manners.	rend, makes, renders.
l'étoile, the star.	le nom, name.	ses, his, her, its.
la fierté, pride.	la mort, death.	perçant, piercing.
le temps, time.		nos, our.
le cheval, horse.		la remède, remedy.

English into French.

1. I have two brothers and three sisters. 2. Have you the corals and the enamels? 3. Does he like horses and also jewels? 4. We have the children on our knees. 5. The cow has seen our cabbages. 6. I have seen your labors. 7. Are there jackals in America? 8. There are no remedies.

EXERCISE 9.

Secs. 78-80.—Number of Nouns continued.

1. Y a-t-il des arcs-en-ciel? 2. Aimes-tu les beaux-frères de ma mère? 3. Les chefs-d'œuvre de Michel-Ange (Sec. 40) sont à Rome. 4. Les parapluies sont des compagnons très-utiles en Écosse. 5. Les passeports sont demandés en France par les gendarmes. 6. Ils ont deux ou trois essuie-mains. 7. Les enfans ont les pleurs faciles. 8. Donnez-moi deux demi-livres, une de sucre, l'autre de café. 9. Les Jésuites ont plus d'arrière-pensées dans l'esprit que de paroles dans la bouche. 10. Les plai-

sirs ainsi que les peines troublent l'âme. 11. Voici un exemple tiré des papiers anglais.

Vocabulary.

arc-en-ciel (bow-in-sky), rainbow.	le parole, word.
beau-frère (fine-brother), brother-in-law.	la bouche, mouth.
chef-d'œuvre (chief of work), masterpiece.	le plaisir, pleasure.
parapluie (for rain), umbrella.	la peine, pain.
passport (pass gate), passport.	arrière-pensée (back-thought), reservation.
gendarme (man of arms), police.	essuie-main (wipe-hands), towel.
Ecosse, Scotland.	ainsi que, as well as.
pleurs, tears.	demi-livre, half-pound.
le sucre, sugar.	troublent, disturb.
l'autre, other.	tiré, taken.
le café, coffee.	le papier, paper.
l'esprit, mind.	exemple, instance.
	facile, ready, easy.

English into French.

1. Where are your (**vos**) towels? 2. The stars of the sky are one of God's masterpieces. 3. Do children have (children have they) tears always ready? 4. Do you have many reservations in your words? 5. Where is my mother's umbrella? 6. Your passports are on the table or in your hat. 7. Give me some sugar for (**pour**) my brother's children, also some paper.

EXERCISE 10.

Secs. 81-2.—Case of Nouns.

1. Je distingue, à l'horizon, la fumée d'un bateau à vapeur. 2. L'eau de fontaine est dangereuse en été. 3. Merci de la généalogie! 4. Bonne réussite! bon voyage, mon ami. 5. Un honnête homme et un noble projet vont toujours figure découverte (Dumas). 6. Sa probité l'a rendu l'arbitre de tous ses voisins. 7. Le roi l'a nommé ministre des affaires étrangères. 8. Il a inventé cette histoire. 9. Elle vend ce secret (Sec. 39, 2, N.) mille louis d'or à Fouché. 10. Il a passé l'été à la campagne. 11. Un juge, l'an passé, me prit à son service. 12. Allez tout le long

de la prairie. 13. Il va toujours son chemin. 14. Les langues mortes et les vivantes ont presque toutes une grande analogie. 15. Il dort d'un sommeil calme.

Vocabulary.

je vais, I go.	nous allons, we go.	va-t-il? does he go?
tu vas, thou goest.	vous allez, you go.	allez-vous? are you going?
il va, he goes.	ils vont, they go.	vont-ils? are they going?
la fumée, smoke.	la campagne, field.	passé, passed, past.
le bateau, boat.	distingue, perceive.	le, him, it.
la vapeur, steam.	dangereuse, dangerous.	me, me.
la généalogie, genealogy.	merci! spare!	prit, took.
la figure, face.	honnête, honest.	le langue, language.
la probité, uprightness.	découverte, discovered.	l'été, summer.
l'arbitre, arbiter.	rendu, rendered.	bonne, good.
le voisin, neighbor.	tout, all.	l'ami, friend.
le ministre, minister.	ses, their, his, her.	louis d'or, gold piece.
les affaires, business.	nommé, named.	le juge, judge.
le chemin, road.	étranger, foreign.	mort, dead.
le sommeil, sleep.	mille, 1000.	vivant, living.
le voyage, journey.	inventé, invented.	presque, almost.
la réussite, success.	cette, this, that.	dort, slept.
le projet, project.	vend, sells.	calme, calm.
		le long, the length.

English into French.

1. Have you any spring-water? 2. No, sir, we are going to the spring in the meadow. 3. I perceive in the road the minister of foreign affairs. 4. Steamboats are dangerous but useful also. 5. The king is the friend of the judge. 6. Are we going the whole length of the prairie? 7. No, sir, my friend is dead.

EXERCISE 11.

Secs. 83-85.—Gender of Adjectives.

1. Nous avons des anneaux d'or massif, et des boutons de métal jaune. 2. Votre cheval, est-il très-vif? 3. Non,

mais ma jument est très-vive. 4. Le temps est doux ; la chaleur du soleil est très-douce. 5. J'ai envie d'une robe bleue. 6. Tous les citoyens sont égaux devant la loi. 7. Les étoiles de la Grande-Ourse sont des astres boréaux. 8. J'entends déjà Baldus, ce pedant froid et sec, Qui mâche à tout propos du latin. 9. Voilà une fleur gentille, n'est-ce pas ? 10. Non, monsieur, mais votre bouquet est gentil. 11. Aimez-vous les phrases ambiguës ?

Vocabulary.

massif, solid.	le bouton, button.	l'astre, constella- tion.
jaune, yellow.	le cheval, horse.	
vif, quick, lively.	le métal, metal.	l'ours, the bear.
doux, sweet.	la jument, mare.	le latin, Latin.
bleu, blue.	le temps, weather.	la fleur, flower.
égal, equal.	la chaleur, heat.	devant, before.
boréal, northern.	le soleil, sun.	j'entends, I hear.
froid, cold.	l'envie, desire.	déjà, already.
sec, dry.	la robe, dress.	mâche, mumbles.
gentil, nice.	le citoyen, citizen.	propos, occasion.
un anneau, a ring.	la loi, law.	est-ce ? is it ?
l'or, gold.	l'étoile, the star.	

English into French.

1. Where is my father's big dog ? 2. I desire some very nice flowers. 3. Are all men and women equal before the law ? 4. Here is a solid gold ring. 5. Where is the cold and dry pedant who mumbles Latin ? 6. Their buttons are of solid metal. 7. My mare is very pretty and also quick. 8. Do you like the sun's heat ? 9. Your bouquet is dry, is it not ? 10. You have a blue dress, have you not ? 11. You do not mumble Latin, do you ?

EXERCISE 12.

Secs. 86-90.—Gender of Adjectives, and Number.

1. Qui a mon nouveau crayon ? 2. Nous donnons une rose blanche à la sœur de l'actrice. 3. La chair du chien n'est pas bon à manger. 4. Vieux soldat, vieille bête c'est une proverbe. 5. Ce vin est frais, cette eau n'est pas fraîche. 6. Vous êtes fou si vous avez ce fol espoir, car

c'est une folle idée. 7. J'ai un nouvel éventail, un nouveau manteau, et une nouvelle ombrelle. 8. La nation franque était belliqueuse. 9. Le cœur étouffait les objections timides de l'esprit. 10. Il y a des héros en mal comme en bien.

Vocabulary.

nouveau, new.	le crayon, pencil.	l'esprit, mind.
blanc, white.	la chair, flesh.	le héros (Sec. 45),
bête, stupid.	le chien, dog.	hero.
frais, fresh.	le soldat, soldier.	qui, who.
fou, foolish.	le vin, wine.	manger, eat.
belliqueux, warlike.	l'espoir, hope.	était, was.
timide, timid.	l'idée, idea.	étouffait, stifled.
mal, ill, bad.	l'éventail, fan.	comme, as, like.
bien, well.	le manteau, cloak.	

English into French.

1. The flesh of the horse is not bad to eat. 2. It is my sister who has some fresh wine. 3. You are very stupid if you have that silly idea. 4. His heart was timid in evil. 5. He stifled his foolish objections. 6. Are you a hero in good or in evil? 7. Where is your father's old horse? 8. Who has my (ma) new white rose?

EXERCISE 13.

Secs. 91-94.—Agreement and Position of Adjectives.

1. Le fer donne aux végétaux et aux animaux les couleurs rouges et bleus. 2. La musique et le dessin sont très-amusantes. 3. L'humilité est la base des vertus chrétiennes. 4. Je n'aime pas les personnes qui sont cruelles envers les animaux. 5. Les liens conjugaux sont sacrés. 6. Ce chien est mon fidèle ami. 7. Le bien public est préférable à l'intérêt particulier. 8. Il y a deux heures et demie. 9. Il est nu-tête et nu-jambes. 10. Mon frère a les pieds nus. 11. Je vous donne les deux lettres ci-incluses. 12. Les maisons qui sont proches de la ville sont sujettes aux inondations. 13. Ces étoffes sont belles, aussi coûtent-elles cher. 14. Me préservent les

cieux d'une nouvelle guerre! 15. Quel noble cœur vous avez!

Vocabulary.

rouge, red.	cher, dear.	la jambe, leg.
amusant, amusing.	le fer, iron.	le pied, foot,
chrétien, Christian.	le végétal, vegetable.	le lettre, letter.
cruel, cruel.	l'animal, animal.	la maison, house.
sacré, sacred.	la couleur, color.	l'étoffe, stuff.
fidèle, faithful.	la musique, music.	la guerre, war.
particulier, private.	le dessin, drawing.	aussi, also.
demi, half.	la vertu, virtue.	coûtent, cost.
nu, naked.	le lien, bond.	préservent, preserve.
inclus, enclosed.	le bien, the good.	de, from, of.
proche, near.	l'intérêt, interest.	quel, how, what a.
sujet, subject.	la tête, head.	envers, toward, to.

English into French.

1. Does your brother love new books? 2. I do not love a boy who is cruel to animals. 3. The man, the horse, the dog, are all ready. 4. We are going to the house with naked feet. 5. Are you going to the city bare-foot? 6. My uncle's horse has white legs. 7. We give an hour and a half of time. 8. There is a little man in the road.

EXERCISE 14.

Secs. 95-98.—Comparison of Adjectives, &c.

1. Le chien, est-il plus fort que le loup? 2. L'âne est moins beau que le cheval. 3. Mon plus grand plaisir c'est la pêche ou la nage. 4. Plus nous avons besoin de gens pour nous servir, moins nous sommes heureux. 5. Les hommes les plus savants ne sont pas toujours les plus vertueux. 6. L'homme est plus puissant, plus sacré que la loi (Voltaire). 7. Les faux patriotes sont plus tyrans que les pères despotes. 8. Ces orphelins sont d'autant plus à plaindre qu'ils n'ont personne au monde. 9. Les mouches sont on ne peut plus désagréable. 10. Je ne suis pas si fou que de vous croire.

Vocabulary.

fort, strong.	le loup, wolf.	ne-personne, no one.
plus, more.	l'âne, the ass.	le monde, world.
que, than, as.	le plaisir, pleasure.	le tyran, tyrant.
heureux, happy.	la pêche, fishing.	la mouche, the fly.
savant, wise.	la nage, swimming.	pour, in order to.
vertueux, virtuous.	le besoin, need.	servir, serve.
puissant, powerful.	les gens, people.	moins, less.
faux, false.	la loi, the law.	toujours, always.
désagréable, unpleasant.	la patriote, patriot.	croire, believe.
grand, great.	le despote, despot.	
	l'orphelin, orphan.	

d'autant plus, so much the more.

à plaindre, to be pitied.

on ne peut plus, as possible (one can't more).

English into French.

1. Is the flesh of the horse good to eat? 2. It is better than the flesh of the dog. 3. Do you like fishing? 4. Yes, but swimming is the best. 5. Despotic tyrants are often cruel to the people. 6. The ass is so much the more to be pitied because he is not so beautiful as the horse. 7. Are you so foolish as to believe the false patriots? 8. Is not the tyrant as disagreeable as possible?

EXERCISE 15.

Secs. 99-100.—Numerals and Expressions of Size.

1. Il y a plus de deux cent quatre-vingt quinze personnes dans la rue. 2. J'ai vingt-trois ans. 3. La grande muraille à le nord de la Chine a environ quinze cent milles de longueur. 4. Sur la riche couronne de sa majesté il y a une grosse émeraude de sept pouces de tour, la plus belle du monde. 5. Les tours de l'église Notre-Dame à Paris sont hautes de 250 pieds. 6. Vous êtes plus petite que lui de toute la tête. 7. J'ai reçu cent dix couteaux, cent vingt canifs, et mille quarante plumes. 8. Vous avez un cent d'huîtres. 9. J'ai deux mètres de drap. 10. Trois cents Turcs sont tués. 11. La reine Victoria monta au trône d'Angleterre, l'an mil huit cent trente-sept.

Vocabulary.

un an, a year.	le tour, circumference.	le trône, throne.
la rue, the street.	la tour, tower.	plus de, more than.
la muraille, wall.	l'église, church.	environ, about.
le nord, north.	le pied, foot.	gros, large.
la Chine, China.	le couteau, knife.	petit, small, short.
la longueur, length.	le canif, pen-knife.	toute, all.
la couronne, crown.	la plume, pen.	reçu, received.
l'émeraude, emerald	une huître, oyster.	tués, killed.
le pouce, inch	le mètre, yard.	monta, mounted.
(thumb).	le drap, cloth.	Angleterre, England.

English into French.

1. How long is your house? 2. It is 97 feet long and 73 feet wide. 3. Napoleon III. died in 1873. 4. I have been (am) here 21 days. 5. How many (combien de) Frenchmen were killed? 305. 6. How many yards of cloth have you? 69. 7. When did Napoleon mount the throne? 1851.

EXERCISE 16.

Secs. 101-106.—Expressions of Age and Time.—Cardinal Numbers.

1. Le pape Pie neuf est l'ennemi de l'empereur Guillaume trois. 2. Je suis dans ma vingt et unième année. 3. Louis est le dix-huitième de sa classe, et Jules est le dernier. 4. Quelle heure est-il? 5. Il est midi et demi. 6. C'est aujourd'hui le premier Janvier. 7. La semaine est la cinquante-deuxième partie de l'année. 8. Avez-vous le deuxième volume de l'histoire d'Angleterre, par Macaulay? 9. Donnez-moi une livre et demie de sucre. 10. Vous avez les trois quarts de cette orange. 11. Romulus fut le premier, Numa le second roi de Rome. 12. Quel quantième avons-nous aujourd'hui?

Vocabulary.

le pape, the pope.	Janvier, January.	par, by.
l'année, year.	la semaine, week.	quantième, day of the month.
la classe, class.	le quart, quarter.	quel, quelle, which,
le dernier, last.	aujourd'hui, to-day.	what.
l'heure, hour.	la partie, part, fraction.	

English into French.

1. How many weeks are there in a year? 52. 2. Give me 56 $\frac{1}{2}$ yards of cloth. 3. Napoleon III. died in 1873. 4. It is the 31st day of the month. 5. What time is it? Half-past twelve at night. 6. What day of the month is it? January 27th. 7. The first week in January.

EXERCISE 17.

Secs. 107-109.—Personal Pronouns.

1. Donnez-moi mon chapeau. 2. Je te le donne. 3. Il me le donne. 4. Je le lui donne. 5. Vous ne me le donnez pas. 6. Avez-vous le fusil? Oui, je l'ai. 7. Où sont les essuie-mains? 8. Nous ne les avons pas. 9. M'aimez-vous Marie? Oui, je t'aime. 10. Nous vous disons ce que nous pensons. 11. Elle ne nous écrit pas souvent. 12. Plus une chose est difficile, plus il est honorable. 13. Elle se donne du plaisir. 14. Ils s'entre-parlent. 15. Je te le dis du fond de mon cœur. 16. La révolution l'a fait a son image. 17. L'Amour est celui de tous les dieux qui sait le mieux le chemin du Parnasse.

Vocabulary.

Verb dire, 'to say,' Present Indicative.

je dis, I say.	nous disons, we say.	dit-il? says he?
tu dis, thou sayest.	vous dites, you say.	dites-vous? say you?
il dit, he says.	ils disent, they say.	dit-elle? says she?
elle dit, she says.	elles disent, " "	dis-je? do I say?
le fusil, the gun.	écrit, writes.	entre, between.
pensons, we think.	souvent, often.	le fond, bottom.
ce que, that which.	la chose, the thing.	tous, all.
fait, made.	celui, the one.	sait, knows.
parlent, they talk.	le plaisir, pleasure.	

English into French.

1. Are you giving it to me? 2. He is giving himself pleasure. 3. We are saying it to one another. 4. I am older than you by ten years. 5. Do you love the child? Yes, I love him. 6. I love her. I do not love her (him, it). 7. Where is the gun, Mary? I am saying to you

where it is (telling). 8. Are all honorable things difficult? Yes, they are the most difficult.

EXERCISE 18.

Sec. 110.—Personal Pronouns continued.

1. Avez-vous quelques vérités à dire aux rois, ne les leur dites pas. 2. Un écrivain qui s'aime, forme tous ses héros semblables à soi-même (Boileau). 3. N'allons point nous appliquer à nous-mêmes les traits d'une censure générale (Molière). 4. Êtes-vous la sœur de mon oncle? Oui, je la suis. Oui, je le suis. 5. Il est, il est encore des mortels généreux. 6. Il me vient une idée. 7. Pourquoi donc vient-il par ici tant de jeunes gentilshommes? (V. Hugo). 8. Les objets de nos vœux le sont de nos plaisirs (Corneille). 9. Il est de grands hommes qui ne le sont que par des vertus. 10. Cette femme est belle, et le sera longtemps. 11. Je me regarde comme la mère de cet enfant; je la suis de cœur, je la suis par ma tendresse pour lui (Academy.)

Vocabulary.

la vérité, truth.	quelque, some.	pourquoi, why.
l'écrivain, writer.	dire, to say.	donc, then.
le trait, feature.	forme, forms.	tant, so many.
gentilhomme, gentleman.	semblable, similar.	par, by.
le vœu, vow.	appliquer, apply.	longtemps, long.
la tendresse, tenderness.	généreux, generous.	ici, here.
	vient, comes.	ne—que, only.

English into French.

1. Are you the mother of this child? I am. 2. There is coming here a very old man. 3. Is he a great man? He is (so). 4. Are the features of the censure general or special? (*particulier*). 5. How many gentlemen are there in the garden? 95. 6. Your friend is a great man; but he is only so by his virtues.

EXERCISE 19.

Secs. 111–113.—Personal Pronouns continued.

1. Je suis plus grand que toi, qu'elle. 2. Qui est ici,

lui ou elle ? C'est moi. 3. Mon frère et eux sont ici. 4. Je suis mille fois plus criminel que lui (Racine). 5. Eux seuls sont exempt de la loi commune. 6. Ce n'est pas moi, dit-il, c'est lui. 7. Toi et moi, nous sommes bons amis. 8. Moi, je suis américain. 9. Qui parle ? Eux. 10. La vertu est aimable en soi. 11. Les aimants sont entre eux un peuple bien bizarre. 12. Vos chevaux ont faim. Donnez-leur du foin. 13. On aime les autres rarement plus que soi. 14. O fortune ! tu fais de nous un jeu. 15. Y a-t-il des corps subtils en soi ? 16. Chacun ne songe plus qu'à soi (Rousseau).

Vocabulary.

la fois, the time.
l'aimant, lover.
le peuple, people.
le faim, hunger.
le foin, hay.
l'autre, the other.
le jeu, game, sport.

le corps, body.
que, than.
criminel, criminal.
seul, only, alone.
commune, common.
aimable, lovely.
bizarre, queer, odd.

entre, between,
among.
on, one, people.
rarement, rarely.
fais, do.
subtil, light, subtle.
chacun, each one.

English into French.

1. Are you giving it to me ? 2. Do not give it to him. 3. Your dog is hungry. Give him some water. 4. She and I do good to each other. 5. We are the sport of fortune. 6. Do you love others more than yourself ? 7. Who is more criminal than they ? Than we ?

EXERCISE 20.

Sees. 114-116.—Personal Pronouns continued.

1. Dieu vient de l'appeler à lui. 2. Je ne vous fais pas des reproches frivoles. 3. De qui parlez vous ? Je leur parle, je parle d'elle, je parle à elle. 4. Je désire vous acheter votre chien ; vendez-le-moi. 5. Il désire votre chien. Ne le lui donnez pas. 6. Je vous le donne pour six francs. 7. Je donne plus que vous et qu'elle. 8. Votre montre est magnifique ; vendez-la moi. 9. Mon avocat et moi, nous sommes de cet avis. 10. Moi seul à votre amour ai su la conserver. 11. Mon père est endormi. Ne le parlez pas. 12. Il n'a rien à lui ; tout est à ses amis (Lamennais). 13. Un bienfait porte sa récompense en

soi (Acad.). 14. L'Anglais porte partout sa patrie avec lui (St. Pierre). 15. Fussent-ils innocent, leur trouvera des crimes (Racine). 16. Qui plus de moi désire vous voir une volonté ferme.

Vocabulary.

vient de (comes from), has just.	trouvera, will find.	la volonté, the will.
appeler, to call.	vendez, sell.	avis, opinion, advice.
fais, make, do.	la montre, the watch.	seul, alone.
acheter, buy.	magnifique, magnifi- cent.	endormi, asleep.
porte, carries.	le bienfait, the favor.	partout, everywhere.
la patrie, country.	avec, with.	fussent, were they.
		ferme, firm.

English into French.

1. Are you giving me your horses and your dogs? I give them to you. 2. We are the sport of fortune. 3. God has just called him to heaven. 4. Do not make frivolous reproaches to me. 5. I am giving more money than you and thou and he and she. 6. Sell me your horse. Here are thirty francs. 7. Do not sell him to him or to her or to them, but give him to us. 8. I am not speaking of him or of her. 9. Will he find crimes for them? Has he a firm will?

EXERCISE 21.

Secs. 117-118.—Possessive Pronouns.

1. J'aime vos grands et vos petits enfans. 2. Ma tante, où êtes-vous? Je suis dans ma chambre. 3. Avez-vous un de mes livres? 4. Monsieur votre père, est-il à la maison? 5. Madame votre épouse, où est-elle? 6. Je l'aime comme mon propre frère. 7. Quel malheur est le nôtre! 8. Mais j'ai les miens, la cour, le peuple, à contenter. 9. Voici une de mes nièces, que je vous présente. 10. Il est douloureux de se séparer de ses amis, quand c'est pour un long voyage. 11. J'ai vu Londres; ses palais, ses églises, ses écoles, ses monuments n'ont rien d'extraordinaire. 12. Je n'ai pas vendu du leur, mais j'ai vendu du vôtre, et un peu du mien. 13. Notre mérite

nous attire la louange des honnêtes gens, et notre étoile celle du public (La Rochefoucauld).

Vocabulary.

la chambre, chamber, room.	la cour, court.
une épouse, wife, spouse.	le peuple, people.
propre, own, proper.	la nièce, niece.
le malheur, misfortune.	le voyage, journey.
une école, school.	la louange, praise.
le mérite, merit.	une étoile, star.
contenter, satisfy.	douloureux, painful.
présente, introduce.	séparer, to separate.
vendu, sold.	les miens, my own (people).

English into French.

1. Are your children large or small? 2. Where is your uncle? He is in the garden. 3. One of my aunts is ill. 4. Our misfortunes are great. 5. It is painful to be separated from one's own friends. 6. Have you seen the palaces and churches of Paris? Are they extraordinary?

EXERCISE 22.

Secs. 119-120.—**Demonstrative Pronouns "Ce" and "Celui."**

1. Quel est ce cri? 2. Cette femme est capricieuse. 3. Les maladies de l'esprit sont plus dangereuses que celles du corps. 4. Qui sont ceux qui prétendent à cette place? 5. Celle-ci me coûte dix mille francs, et celle-là douze mille. 6. Cet enfant que vous voyez au bout de ce peuplier, c'est Jules. 7. Le moment du péril est celui du courage. 8. Qui trahit son pays, celui-là est infâme. 9. Ces livres sont ceux que j'aime tant. 10. L'âme et le corps ont une rôle bien différent; celle-là commande, et celui-ci obéit. 11. Voici mon parapluie et celui de ma sœur. 12. Cirez mes souliers et ceux de mon ami. 13. Ceux qui connaissent la race romaine ceux-là sentiront le récit de Tite-Live (Michelet).

Vocabulary.

le cri, the cry.	le corps, body.
la maladie, disease.	le franc, franc.
l'esprit, mind.	le bout, end, base.

le peuplier, poplar.	coûte, costs.
le péril, danger.	trahit, betrays.
le pays, country.	infâme, infamous.
la rôle, part, role.	tant, so much.
le soulier, shoe.	obéit, obeys.
le récit, narrative.	cirez, black, polish.
Tite-Live, Livy.	connaissent, know.
capricieuse, capricious.	sentiront, will feel, enjoy.

English into French.

1. Who is it that betrays his country? 2. He who is infamous. 3. What is good often costs much. 4. This is yours, but I have sold my own. 5. This poplar is 159 years old. 6. She who is capricious is unfortunate. 7. The history of Livy is the one I like so much.

EXERCISE 23.

Sec. 121.—The Neuter Demonstrative "Ce."

1. Ce que je crains le plus, c'est le trahison. 2. Ne faites pas cela! 3. Ce qui coûte peu est trop cher quand il n'est d'aucun usage. 4. Je sais qui c'est. 5. Ce qui l'arrête, c'est la peur. 6. Voilà ce que j'aime. 7. Ceci est pour vous et celà pour moi. 8. Ce n'était pas un léger fardeau que l'épiscopat (Chateaubriand). 9. C'est être criminel que d'être misérable. 10. C'est à vous, mon esprit, à qui je veux parler (Boileau). 11. Ce n'est de ces sortes de respects dont je vous parle. 12. Celui qui dit qu'il connaît Dieu et ne garde pas ses commandemens, c'est un menteur (Bossuet). 13. Ce qu'on souffre avec le moins de patience, ce sont les perfidies, les trahisons, les noirceurs. 14. Avez-vous vendu de notre blé ou du leur? 15. J'ai vendu du vôtre. 16. Chaque science a ses principes.

Vocabulary.

le trahison, treason.	- le menteur, liar.
l'usage, use.	la perfidie, perfidy.
la peur, fear.	la noirceur, foul deed.
le fardeau, burden.	le blé, wheat.
le respect, consideration.	le principe, principle.

je crains, I fear.		il connait, he knows.
vous faites, you do.		il garde, he keeps.
il coûte, he, it costs.		il souffre, he suffers.
il arrête, he, it stops.		je sais, I know.
il était, he, it was.		trop, too, too much.
je veux, I wish.		cher, dear.
qui, who.	pour, for.	léger, light.
être, to be.	parler, to speak.	peu, little.
quand, when.	aucun, any.	dont, of which.

English into French.

1. That which is good often costs much. 2. Is this wheat yours or mine? 3. This science costs more than that. 4. It is to you that I am telling this. 5. Of what kind of considerations does he speak? 6. Treason is not a light burden. 7. What do you fear most, perfidy or dark deeds? 8. I know the principles of that science.

EXERCISE 24.

Secs. 122-123.—Interrogative Pronouns, “*Quel, Qui, Que, Quoi.*”

1. De qui est-ce que vous rirez tant? 2. Pour qui, un avare, amasse-t-il des richesses. 3. Que sont les hommes devant Dieu? 4. À quoi pensez-vous? 5. J'ignore quoi, où, et comment. 6. Quelle heure est-il? 7. Quelle folie d'agir ainsi! 8. À qui est ce parapluie-là? 9. À quoi sert d'avoir un roi? (Fénelon). 10. Que sert la politique? 11. Moi, que je lui prononce un arrêt si sévère! (Racine). 12. Que veux-tu que nous fassions? 13. À qui donc veux-tu que ce soit? 14. Mais que veux-tu qui nous arrive de pis? 15. Que la terre est petite à qui la voit des cieux! (Delille). 16. Que les mœurs du pays où vous vivez sont saintes, qui arrachent à l'attentat des plus vils esclaves! (Montesquieu).

Vocabulary.

que, like the English 'that,' may be a conjunction as well a pronoun.		
l'avare, miser.	une heure, an hour.	la politique, policy,
richesses, riches.	la folie, folly.	politics.

un arrêt, judgment.	vous pensez, you think.	tu veux, thou wishest.
la terre, earth.	j'ignore, I am ignorant.	il voit, he sees.
les cieux, sky.	nous fassions, we should do.	devant, before.
le pays, country.	ils arrachent, they take away.	comment, how.
l'esclave, slave.	vous vivez, you live.	ainsi, thus.
l'attentat, attempt.	il sert, it is of use.	sévère, severe.
avoir, to have.		pis, worse.
vous rirez, you laugh.		saint, holy.
il amasse, he piles up.		vil, vile, base.
agir, to do, act.		des, from the.

English into French.

1. To whom are you speaking? 2. Who is there who has no principles? 3. Who is the greatest miser in the world? 4. Of what use is a slave? 5. Whom do you love? 6. What do you like? 7. What are you laughing so much about? 8. What do I wish you and her to do?

EXERCISE 25.

Sec. 124.—⁻¹²⁵Interrogatives, "Lequel, Que'st-ce," &c.

1. Lequel de vos fils est malade? 2. Auquel de ces écoliers donnez-vous le prix? 3. Lequel est le plus heureux dans ce monde, du sage avec sa raison, ou du dévot dans son délire? (Rousseau). 4. Après cela tu jugeras toi-même, lequel vaut mieux de ce que tu dis, ou de ce que tu fais. 5. Qui est-ce que vous demandez? 6. Qu'est-ce qui vous fait mal? 7. Laquelle de ces dames est votre épouse? 8. Est-ce votre désir d'aller par là? Oui ce l'est. 9. Qu'est-ce que vous voulez que je vous donne? 10. Est-ce un autel aux dieux des champs? 11. Il a été volé la nuit; mais aussi pourquoi n'a-t-il personne pour garder sa maison? (Acad.) 12. Que m'importe quel est le faible ou le puissant? (Dumas). 13. Que faites-vous là? 14. En quel état sont les choses?

Vocabulary.

Verb Faire, 'to do,' present tense.

je fais, I do, make.	nous faisons, we do.	elles font, they do.
tu fais, thou doest.	vous faites, you do.	elle fait, she does.
il fait, he does.	ils font, they do.	fait-il? does he?

l'écolier, scholar.	le fils, son.	il importe, it matters.
le prix, prize, price.	le dévot, devotee.	faible, weak.
le sage, wise man.	le délire, extacy.	puissant, powerful.
la raison, reason.	le désir, desire.	là, there.
la dame, lady.	voulez, you wish.	l'état, state.
l'autel, altar.	volé, robbed.	jugeras, shalt judge.
le champ, field.	aussi, also.	il vaut, it is worth.
la nuit, night.	pourquoi, why.	oui, yes.
la chose, thing.	garder, watch.	mal, harm.

English into French.

1. Which of your dogs is the largest? 2. Which one of these gentlemen is your father? 3. The one of those coats which I like best is the blue one. 4. What are they doing here? 5. Who is the god of the fields? 6. Has he an altar there? 7. It matters not to me which one you have.

EXERCISE 26.

Secs. 126-128.—Relative Pronouns.

1. Le mensonge est un vice pour lequel on a beaucoup d'horreur. 2. Il ne faut pas tenir les promesses qui sont nuisibles à ceux à qui on les fait. 3. Monsieur Pierre, avec le fusil duquel (*or* de qui) je chasse, est malade. 4. Le temps que nous perdrons est irréparable. 5. J'aime les chiens qui sont fidèles, et le chat qui prend les souris. 6. Ce sont eux qui ont froid. 7. Il faut donner à chacun le sien. 8. Un jour sur les événemens duquel il faut jeter une voile. 9. Celui qui amasse les richesses, ne sait pas pour qui il les amasse. 10. Ceux qui se contentent de peu sont heureux. 11. Mais ne m'es tu pas fiancée? Je le suis. 12. Si vous êtes bavarde, votre frère ne l'est pas moins.

Vocabulary.

il faut, it is necessary, you must.	le fusil, gun.	perdrons, we shall lose.
le mensonge, lie, ly- ing.	le chat, cat.	chacun, each one.
la promesse, promise.	la souris, mouse.	fiancée, affianced.
Pierre, Peter.	le froid, cold.	horreur, horror.
	tenir, to hold.	le jour, day.
	fidèles, faithful.	

l'événement, event.	beaucoup, much.	jeter, to throw.
la voile, veil.	nuisible, injurious.	de, with.
le peu, little.	il chasse, he hunts.	ils contentent, they
bavarde, loquacious.	il prend, he takes, catches.	content.

English into French.

1. What is the cat good for? She catches the mice which eat our bread. 2. With whose gun are you hunting? 3. With that of my friend Peter, who is also a loquacious person. 4. For whom does the miser amass riches? Often for those whom he does not love.

EXERCISE 27.

Secs. 129-131.—The Substantive Relative.—“Dont,” and “Où.”

1. Le petit garçon dont le père est mort est maintenant chez nous. 2. Après l'existence de Dieu, il n'y a rien dont je doute moins que de l'immortalité de l'âme. 3. Ce que j'admire le plus dans l'éléphant, c'est cette pompe dont il saisit sa nourriture. 4. Ce qui est beau à voir, c'est la chute du Niagara. 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un peuple en furie? (V. Hugo). 6. Insensé que j'étais, de croire à leur bonne foi! (Acad.). 7. Le fripon qu'il était, m'emporte dix mille francs (Acad.). 8. Voilà ce que c'est. 9. Fuir n'est un déshonneur que pour ceux dont on peut soupçonner la valeur (Crébillon). 10. C'est une grâce où je n'osais prétendre. 11. Par où réussira-t-il?

Vocabulary.

mort, dead.	fuir, run away.	osais, should dare.
chez, with.	maintenant, now.	la nourriture, food.
doute, doubt.	soupçonner, expect.	la chute, fall.
moins, less.	prétendre, pretend.	la furie, rage.
saisit, grasps.	réussira, will succeed.	le fripon, rogue.
voir, to see.	insensé, senseless.	la valeur, courage.
croire, believe.	emporte, carry off.	la grâce, grace.

English into French.

1. Who does not admire the fall of Niagara, whose height is 198 feet. 2. Rogue that he is, he will not suc-

ceed. 3. The lady whose child is dead is very unfortunate. 4. How foolish you are, to believe in the good faith of that loquacious fellow!

EXERCISE 28.

Sec. 132.—“**En**” used as a Pronoun.

1. La fortune a son prix; l'imprudent en abuse, l'hypocrite en médit, et l'honnête homme en use. 2. De mes sujets séduits qu'il comble la misère; Il en est l'ennemi, j'en dois être le père (Voltaire). 3. Vous avez de bon café; donnez-leur-en. 4. Demain! le temps est court, et le terme est prochain; il en faut profiter. 5. N'y a-t-il pas de terre dans l'univers pour en donner à tous les hommes? 6. Les limites des sciences sont comme l'horizon; plus on en approche plus elles reculent. 7. Les causes de notre élévation, le sont souvent de notre ruine. 8. Disez-vous que nous en sommes les auteurs? Oui, vous l'êtes. 9. Il est de grands hommes qui le sont par les vertus.

Vocabulary.

le prix, price, value.	médit, slanders.	reculent, withdraw.
le sujet, subject.	séduit, seduced.	court, short.
la misère, misery.	comble, fills up.	pour, for.
le terme, end, term.	je dois, I ought.	tous, all.
la terre, land, earth.	demain, to-morrow.	comme, like.
la ruine, ruin.	prochain, near.	auteur, author.

English into French.

1. How much land have you? Give me some. 2. Time has its value. The prudent does not abuse it. 3. Do you say that I am the author of your misery? Yes, you are. 4. Who is a hypocrite? He who slanders fortune. 5. Where are the boundaries of science? Who approaches them?

EXERCISE 29.

Secs. 133-5.—“**Y**” as a Pronoun, and the Indefinite “**On**.”

1. Vous avez peu de bien; joignez-y ma fortune. 2. Chargez-vous de cette enfant; donnez-lui vos soins.



3. Chargez-vous de cette affaire; donnez-y vos soins. 4. Ne soyez à la cour, si vous voulez à plaire, Ni fade adulateur ni parleur trop sincère (La Fontaine). 5. On pardonne aisément le mal involontaire. 6. On n'est des juifs. 7. N'est-on jamais tyran qu'avec le diadème? 8. Quitte-t-on aisément, pour jamais, ce qu'on aime? 9. Quoique je parle beaucoup de vous, ma fille, j'y pense encore davantage (Mme. Sevigné). 10. On finit par où l'on devait commencer. 11. En quelque pays que j'aie été, j'y ai vécu, comme j'avais dû y passer ma vie.

Vocabulary.

le bien, goods, property.	beaucoup, much.	dû, been obliged, ought.
le soin, care, attention.	davantage, more.	joignez, unite.
la cour, the court.	soyez-vous, be, be ye.	fade, insipid.
adulateur, flatterer.	trop, too, too much.	avec, with.
parleur, speaker.	il quitte, he leaves.	jamais, ever.
aisément, easily.	il finit, he ends.	plaire, to please.
le tyran, tyrant.	par où, where.	en, in.
quoique, although.	il devait, he ought.	avais, had.
	quelque, whatever.	été, been.
	vécu, lived.	

English into French.

1. Unite your fortune to mine and give your care to it. 2. What do they say at Paris? 3. You are their enemy; but I ought to be their father. 4. How many countries have you been in? How have you lived in them?

EXERCISE 30.

Secs. 136-9.—“Personne, Rien, Aucun, Tout.”

1. Personne a-t-il jamais raconté plus naïvement que La Fontaine? (Restaut). 2. Cette place lui convient mieux qu'à personne (Landais). 3. Que vous a coûté cela? Rien. 4. Il semble que cela se soutienne sur rien. 5. Je compte cet homme-là pour rien (Acad.). 6. Je doute qu'aucun de vous le fasse. 7. Il a obtenu ce qu'il demandait sans aucuns frais (Acad.). 8. Aucuns à coups de pierre poursuivirent le dieu (La Fontaine). 9. Toute sa famille est en bon santé. 10. En toute chose il faut con-

sidérer la fin (La Fontaine). 11. Les premiers Chrétiens, tous égaux et tous obscurs, gouvernaient secrètement leur société à la pluralité des voix (Voltaire).

Vocabulary.

jamais, ever.	compte, count.
raconté, related.	fasse, may do.
naïvement, naturally.	obtenu, obtained.
il convient, it suits.	frais, expenses.
semble, seems.	le coup, the blow.
la pierre, stone.	la fin, the end.
égal, equal.	la voix, voice.
soutienne, sustains.	poursuivirent, pursued.

English into French.

1. Nobody is any prettier than your little sister. 2. Who has told stories better than La Fontaine? No one. 3. Is the world sustained upon nothing? So it seems. 4. At how much do you reckon that man? Nothing at all. 5. In everything some expenses must be considered. 6. I doubt that any of them can do anything. 7. Were the first Christians entirely equal?

EXERCISE 31.

Secs. 140-143.—“*Tel, Même, Nul, Autre.*”

1. Pour être heureux ou malheureux il faut se croire tel (Acad.). 2. Sa mémoire est telle qu'il n'oublie jamais rien (Acad.). 3. Tel homme est récompensé qui méritait d'être puni (Acad.). 4. Il fait cela de lui-même. 5. Ce mensonge n'a rien qui ne soit innocent. Les dieux mêmes ne peuvent le condamner. 6. Ce n'est qu'une seule et même chose. 7. Les auteurs des livres nuls sont responsables envers Dieu du temps qu'ils font perdre aux lecteurs (Boiste). 8. Nul plus que moi ne respecte ce qu'il y a de beau dans des certaines situations (Lamartine). 9. Des deux livres que vous me demandez, voici l'un, voilà l'autre (Acad.). 10. Connaissez-vous mon autre sœur? 11. Tout le peuple suivit Virginie, les uns par curiosité, les autres par considération pour Icilius (Vertot). 12. Votre habit est usé, il faut en acheter un autre (Acad.). 13. L'autre jour.

Vocabulary.

il oublie, he forgets.	envers, toward.	l'habit, coat.
puni, punished.	perdre, to lose.	usé, worn out
il soit, he, it may be.	le lecteur, reader.	acheter, buy.
ils peuvent, they can.	connaissez, you know	le jour, day.
seule, alone, only.	suivit, followed.	la mémoire, memory.

[**Note.**—After this no English-French exercises will be given. The teacher can easily obtain an abundance, suited to the needs of each class, by combining words given in the French-English exercises, or already known.

No exercises are give on the form of the verb, regular or irregular. While these forms are being learned, the class should take a thorough review of previous lessons.

References will be given, in the remaining exercises and in the Reader, in connection with every peculiar verb-form.]

EXERCISE 32.

Sec. 147.—Use of Auxiliary Verbs.

1. J'aurais été soldat, si je n'étais poète. 2. Quelques services que vous m'avez rendus, j'en ai été reconnaissant 3. Votre ami, a-t-il eu besoin de moi? 4. Il y aura toujours des guerres entre les hommes. 5. Quelqu'un a-t-il jamais douté sérieusement de l'existence de Dieu? 6. Vous avez reçu une lettre de votre père, n'est-ce pas? 7. Les lettres et l'écriture ont été inventée pour parler aux yeux. 8. Que d'hommes commettent les mêmes fautes qu'ils avaient résolu d'éviter! 9. On a souvent regretté que l'origine de presque toutes les nations, soit ou perdue dans les fables ou ensevelie dans l'obscurité. 10. Demetrius, informé que les Athéniens avaient renversé ses statues;—Ils n'ont pas, repliqua-t-il, renversé la valeur qui me les a fait ériger. 11. Votre père et moi, nous avons été longtemps ennemis l'un de l'autre (Fénelon).

Vocabulary.

le soldat, soldier.	la guerre, war.
le poète, poet.	l'écriture, writing.
le service, favor.	la faute, fault.
le besoin, need.	la valeur, valor.

rendu, rendered.	ensevelie, overwhelmed.
reconnaissant, grateful.	renversé, overturned.
douté, doubted.	repliqua, replied.
reçu, received.	fait, caused, done.
inventé, invented.	l'ennemi, enemy.
résolu, resolved.	ériger, to erect.
presque, almost.	longtemps, long.
perdue, lost.	entre, among, between.

EXERCISE 33.

Sec. 166.—Agreement of Verbs.

1. C'est eux qui ont bâti cette maison. 2. La vertu et l'ambition sont incompatibles. 3. Son courage, son intrépidité étonne les plus braves. 4. Mon frère ou moi ferons la réponse à cette lettre. 5. La plupart des femmes n'ont guère de principes. 6. Une troupe de montagnards écrasa la maison. 7. Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux. 8. Le peuple accourait en foule. 9. Ni l'une ni l'autre manière n'est élégante. 10. Ce ne furent plus les soldats de la république. 11. Tout le monde, roi, reine, ministres, croit à une conspiration prochaine. 12. La plupart (des hommes) ont le mal de mer quand il font un long voyage. 13. Le sommeil ou la mort sont les meilleurs contre-poisons de nos douleurs. 14. Des preuves administrées de cette manière perdent toute autorité dans mon esprit vis-à-vis de vos observations (Rousseau).

Vocabulary.

bâti, built.	la réponse, reply.	le sommeil, sleep.
étonner, to astonish.	la plupart, majority.	guère, hardly.
ferons, will make.	la foule, crowd.	rendre, to render.
écraser, to destroy.	la manière, method.	accourir, to run up.
il croit, he believes.	la conspiration, plot.	prochaine, at hand.
la mer, the sea.	le contre-poison, antidote.	la preuve, proof.
vis-à-vis, face to face.		perdre, to lose.

EXERCISE 34.

Secs. 167–168.—Government of Verbs.

1. Sa probité l'a rendu l'arbitre de tous ses voisins.

2. Une fois je me serais vue riche et parée. 3. Il abuse de ma confiance. 4. Nous nous défions de lui. 5. Quelque incredules que soient les hommes pendant leur vie, ils changent souvent de disposition quand la mort approche. 6. Nous devons user de diligence, et ne pas abuser du temps, parce que la vie dont nous jouissions est courte. 7. De faibles gémissements remplissent les déserts d'une sombre et sauvage harmonie (Chateaubriand). 8. Chacun d'eux résolu de vivre en gentilhomme (La Fontaine). 9. À cette terrible vue le matelot s'élança à la mer. 10. Pourquoi vous êtes-vous levé si tard? 11. Vous vous êtes trompé, mon ami, n'est-ce pas? 12. Ne vous moquez pas du malheur d'autrui, au lieu d'en avoir pitié. 13. C'est la profonde ignorance qui inspire le ton dogmatique. 14. Qu'on aime avec crainte, on aime avec excès.

Vocabulary.

l'arbitre, arbitrator.
 le voisin, neighbor.
 la confiance, confidence.
 parce que, because.
 court, short.
 faible, weak.
 sombre, dark, somber.
 sauvage, savage.
 se tromper, to be mistaken.
 se lever, to arise, get up.
 autrui, other people.
 le lieu, place.

une fois, once, at one time.
 parée, jeweled, adorned.
 se défier de, to defy.
 pendant, during.
 le gémissement, groaning,
 remplir, fill, fulfill.
 résolu, resolved.
 le matelot, sailor.
 se moquer de, to make fun of.
 la pitié, pity.
 inspirer, to inspire.
 rendre, to render.

EXERCISE 35.

Secs. 169–170.—Use of the Tenses.—Present and Perfect.

1. Il s'assied et lui prend les deux mains dans les siennes.
 2. Depuis que tu es avec moi je ne suis plus reine.
 3. Thucyde n'a pas un seul citation. 4. César, atteint de plusieurs coups à la fois, porte ses regards autour de lui ; mais dès qu'il voit Brutus lever le poignard (Sec. 44) sur lui, il quitte la main de Casca qu'il tenait encore, et se couvrant la tête de sa robe, il livre son corps au fer des conjurés (Michelet). 5. J'ai eu une assez longue conversation avec Firmin. J'ai commencé par l'assurer que son

mariage avec toi était certain ; il s'est obstiné à me dire que non (Sec. 198, 2) ; et il m'a toujours répondu là dessus froidement. Ensuite je lui ai dit que je voulais te donner une dot ; et alors il m'a répondu très-gaiement, il m'a sauté au cou, et n'a plus douté de t'épouser demain. Après cela, je lui ai confié que pour des raisons dont je l'ai fait juge, je ne pouvais pas payer ta dot (Sec. 54, 2) le jour même de ton mariage, et il est retombé dans ses doutes. Oh ! tout cela m'a paru clair, et j'ai conclu que Firmin ne t'aime pas (Florian).

Vocabulary.

s'asseyer, to sit down.	conclure, to conclude.
prendre, to take.	depuis que, since.
atteindre, to reach.	la coup, blow.
porter, to carry.	le regard, look, glance.
voir, to see.	autour de, around.
lever, to raise.	dès que, as soon as.
quitter, to let go, quit.	le fer, the sword, iron.
tenir, to hold.	le conjuré, conspirator.
couvrir, to cover.	ensuite, then, next.
livrer, to deliver.	là dessus, thereon.
s'obstiner, to persist.	froidement, coldly.
vouloir, to desire.	le dot, dowry.
sauter à, to leap upon.	le cou, neck.
épouser, to marry.	retomber, to fall again.
confier, to confide.	paru, Part. of paraître, appeared.

EXERCISE 36.

Secs. 171-172.—Use of Tenses.—Imperfect and Preterite.

1. Ce fut vous que refusâtes ma requête. 2. Romulus et Remus bâtirent la ville de Rome, l'an 753 avant Jésus-Christ (Sec. 54, 3, N.). 3. Elle conçut (Sec. 154) de grandes esperances. 4. Nous aperçumes un voleur. 5. La paix qui avait été jusqu'à là le bienfait de ce regne, venait d'être tout à coup compromise. 6. Il se rendit le soir à la Société populaire. Il fut reçu (154) avec enthousiasme. Il lut le discours, et les Jacobins le couvrirent d'applaudissements. Il leur fit alors le récit des attaques qui avaient été dirigées contre lui, et leur dit pour les exciter davantage : Je suis prêt, s'il le faut, à boire la coupe de

Socrate. Robespierre, s'écria un député, je la boirai avec toi (Mignet). 7. Il me prit donc sur l'arçon de la selle, et mon frère fut placé de même entre les bras du domestique. Ce malheureux valet le serra si fort sur l'estomac, que l'on rapporta mon frère mourant (Florian).

Vocabulary.

la requête, request.	le domestique, servant.	lut, from lire, to read.
le voleur, robber.	bâtir, to build.	couvrir, to cover (Sec. 152).
la paix, peace.	concevoir, to conceive.	diriger, to direct.
le bienfait, blessing.	apercevoir, to perceive.	boire, to drink.
le regne, reign.	jusqu'à, up to, until.	prit, from prendre, to take.
le récit, recital.	compromettre, to compromise.	serrer, to press, squeeze.
davantage, more.	recevoir, to receive.	mourir, to die.
prêt, ready.		rapporter, to report.
la coupe, cup.		
le bras, arm.		
l'estomac, stomach.		

EXERCISE 37.

Secs. 173-176.—Use of Tenses.—Pluperfects, Conditionals, &c.

1. Ainsi la philosophie fut pratiquée secrètement par les prêtres; c'est le premier pas; elle fut étudiée par quelque homme supérieur de la Grèce hors des sanctuaires; c'est le second pas; elle fut livrée à la foule par les chrétiens; c'est son troisième et dernier pas (Chateaubriand). 2. Malesherbes avait hérité des vertus parlementaires (Mignet). 3. Dans ma rage je m'élançai vers lui, mais l'équipage avait disparu (Scribe). 4. Soyez sûr qu'il justifiera ce que vous aurez fait pour lui. 5. Nous emploierons (Sec. 151, 4,) toutes nos forces. 6. Nous convînmes (Sec. 152) que nous partirions le lendemain. 7. Le duc ordonna que les jugemens civils seraient prononcés par un podestat civil. 8. Si l'on m'en avait cru (Sec. 199), tout n'en irait que mieux. 9. Jésus-Christ (Sec. 54, 3, N.) a promis qu'il viendrait juger les vivants et les morts. 10. Si nous aurions bien fait, nous t'aurions étranglé. 11. Posé le cas que cela fût, que feriez vous?

Vocabulary.

pratiquer, to practise, cultivate.
 étudier, to study.
 hors de, outside of, beyond.
 livrer, to deliver, give over.
 hériter, to inherit.
 s'élançer, rush (launch oneself).
 disparaître, disappear.
 soyez, from être, be ye.
 justifier, justify.
 employer, to employ.
 convenir, to agree.
 le prêtre, priest.

le pas, step.
 le lendemain, next day.
 civil, civil.
 le podestat, judge.
 cru, from croire, believe.
 poser, to put, suppose.
 étrangler, to strangle.
 promettre, to promise.
 prononcer, to pronounce.
 ordonner, to order, decree.
 partir, to go away, set out.

EXERCISE 38.

Secs. 177-179.—Use of Tenses and Sequence of Tenses.

1. Dieu soit loué. 2. Le diable m'étrangle si je n'aimerais mieux vous savoir enterré que moucharde (Le Sage). 3. Ainsi soit-il. 4. Pour grands que soient les rois ils sont ce que nous sommes (Corneille). 5. Le tribunal a décidé que la donation était nulle. 6. Ne vois-tu pas que l'escalier est rompu ? 7. Si l'on savait même que tu a parlé pour lui ! 8. J'en jugerai lorsque je serai mieux informé. 9. Il est vrai que pendant quarante ans que je l'ai servi, je ne lui ai jamais rien vu faire de semblable (De Vigny). 10. Si vous pardonnez à notre ville, j'y retournerai plein de joie ; si vous la condamnez (Sec. 48), je n'y rentrerai jamais (Chateaubriand). 11. Dis-leur qu'ils soient prêts au besoin. 12. Ils oubliaient qu'ils eussent jamais eu du chagrin.

Vocabulary.

louer, to praise.
 enterrer, to bury.
 ainsi, thus.
 voir, to see.
 informer, to inform.
 servir, to serve.
 retourner, to return.
 rentrer, to re-enter.
 oublier, to forget.

le moucharde, informer, spy.
 l'escalier, staircase.
 vrai, true.
 pendant, during.
 semblable, like, similar.
 prêt, ready.
 le besoin, need, want.
 le chagrin, chagrin, annoyance.

EXERCISE 39.

Sec. 180.—Subjunctive Mode.

[**Note.**—The Section on the Subjunctive cannot well be divided. It is thought better that the class should go over it several times, more thoroughly each time.]

1. À qui dois-je que la terre de France me soit interdite? 2. S'il est vrai qu'Homère ait fait Virgile, c'est son plus belle ouvrage. 3. Les Égyptiens sont les premiers qui aient bien connu les règles du gouvernement (Rousseau): 4. Les Tyriens furent les premiers qui domptèrent les flots (Fénelon). 5. La meilleure satire qu'on puisse faire des mauvaises poètes, c'est de donner d'excellents ouvrages (Voltaire). 6. Ils mourraient (199) tous, soit que nous les traitassions fort mal, soit que leurs maladies fussent incurables (Le Sage). 7. J'ai été malheureusement le premier qui ait fait connaître en France la poésie Anglaise (Voltaire). 8. Je pris congé des deux époux en leur protestant que j'étais ravi que l'hymen (35, 4) eût succédé à leurs longues amours (Le Sage). 9. Je ne sache pas qu'il y ait eu d'hommes blancs devenus noirs. 10. L'homme est le seul animal qui sache qu'il doit mourir. 11. Il y a peu d'hommes qui sachent connaître leurs véritables intérêts (Acad.). 12. La pluralité des dieux est une chose qu'on ne peut s'imaginer qui ait été adoptée par des hommes de bon sens (Restaut). 13. Mentor voulait une grande quantité de jeux qui animassent le peuple (Fénelon). 14. Laquelle des deux têtes crois-tu qui vaille le mieux en ce moment? (V. Hugo). 15. À tel prix qui ce soit, il m'en faut acheter (Corneille). 16. Que la mort la ravisse, ou qu'un rival l'emporte, La douleur d'un amant est également forte (Corneille).

Vocabulary.

interdit, interdicted.

Homère, Homer.

l'ouvrage, work.

connu, from connaître, to know.

la règle, rule.

le flot, wave.

congé, leave, departure.

l'hymen, marriage.

sens, sense, judgment.

le jeu, game, play.

emporter, carry off.

dompter, tame.

mourir, to die.

traiter, to treat.

fort, strong, very.
 pris, from prendre, to take.
 ravir, to ravish.
 devenir, to become.

doit, from devoir, to owe, ought.
 vaille, from valoir, to be worth.
 acheter, to buy.
 l'amant, the lover.

EXERCISE 40.

Sec. 181.—The Infinitive (Alone).

1. Attendre est impossible, agir ne l'est pas moins.
 2. À quoi bon vouloir sauver ma vie? 3. N'aimer que soi, c'est aimer peu de chose. 4. Venez nous voir demain.
 5. Je ne sais pas nager. 6. Chacun dans ce miroir pense voir son image. 7. J'ai vu la tempête faire tourbillonner mon vaisseau (Dumas). 8. Travailler fortifie le corps et l'esprit.
 9. Naître avec le printemps, mourir avec les roses, Voilà du papillon le destin enchanté (Lamartine). 10. Je sens (152), de jour en jour dépérir mon génie (Boileau).
 11. Quoi! personne à qui me fier ici (V. Hugo). 12. Il lui restait deux partis à prendre; s'emparer du pouvoir suprême ou descendre de sa puissance tribunitienne (Chateaub.). 13. Je me rappelais tout ce que j'avais ouï (198) dire à Mentor. 14. Les grands ne croient être nés que pour eux-mêmes (Massillon). 15. Quel parti prendre!
 16. Ah! plutôt mille fois mourir sous les poignards, Que garder à ce prix le trône des Césars (Arnault). 17. Donnez moi de quoi écrire. 18. C'est un homme qui a de quoi vivre. 19. De quel front soutenir ce fâcheux entretien! (Racine).

Vocabulary.

attendre, to wait.
 agir, to act.
 vouloir, to wish.
 sauver, to save.
 nager, to swim.
 penser, to think.
 tourbillonner, to whirl.
 travailler, to labor.
 naître, to be born.
 descendre, to descend.
 tribunitienne, tribune's.
 rappeler, to call back.

le parti, part, side.
 écrire, to write.
 vivre, to live.
 demain, to-morrow.
 sais, from savoir, to know.
 la tempête, tempest.
 le papillon, butterfly.
 le destin, destiny, lot.
 sens, from sentir, to feel.
 fier, to confide.
 rester, to remain.
 s'emparer de, to seize on.

le pouvoir, power.
la puissance, power.
ouïr, to hear.
né, from naître.

plutôt, rather.
soutenir, to sustain.
fâcheux, troublesome.

EXERCISE 41.

Secs. 182-184.—Infinitive with “De” and “À.”

1. Le premier commandement de la religion est d'aimer Dieu. 2. J'aime mieux mourir que de trahir mon secret. 3. Il faillit de nous arriver un grand malheur. 4. Allons, c'est à toi de parler. 5. Il est doux de revoir les murs de la patrie. 6. C'est un maladie d'esprit que de souhaiter des choses impossibles (Fénelon). 7. Verité que j'implore, achève (151, 1) de descendre! (Racine.) 8. Que vous êtes hardi, de vous railler de la reine! (V. Hugo.) 9. Si je sais le secret de lui plaire, Je sais l'art de punir un rival téméraire (Racine). 10. Ils n'ont rien à gagner à se tromper l'un l'autre (V. Hugo). 11. Le dîner est prêt à servir. 12. Qui pardonne aisément invite à l'offenser. 13. Il y a dans certains hommes une certaine médiocrité d'esprit qui contribue à les rendre sages (La Bruyère). 14. Il parle de manière à convaincre les juges de son innocence (Acad.). 15. La vanité commence par ternir les bonnes qualités et finit par les détruire. 16. Ce serait trop long à vous expliquer en un jour (Scribe). 17. La politique ne s'occupait qu'à maintenir l'autorité (Ségur).

Vocabulary.

trahir, to betray.
faillir, to fail, not quite do.
arriver, to happen.
revoir, to see again.
le mur, wall.
la patrie, one's country.
souhaiter, to expect.
la vérité, truth.
plaire, to please.
punir, to punish.
téméraire, rash.
gagner, to gain, earn.

tromper, to deceive.
la vanité, vanity.
ternir, to tarnish.
achever, to deign, grant.
hardi, bold, hardy.
se railler, to make fun of.
le dîner, dinner.
offenser, to injure.
convaincre, to convince.
le juge, the judge.
détruire, to destroy.
expliquer, to explain.

EXERCISE 42.

Secs. 185–186, 2.—The Participles, Present and Past.

1. Les animaux, vivant d'une manière plus conforme à la nature, doivent (154) être sujets à moins de maux que nous (Rousseau). 2. Si le barbier lui tira de sang étant malade, vous lui en avez tiré se portant bien (Le Sage). 3. Les Romains, se destinant à la guerre, et le regardant comme le seul art, ils avaient mis tout leur esprit à la perfectionner (Montesquieu). 4. Je ne puis cacher à Votre Majesté les craintes qu'éprouvent ses fidèles sujets en ne la voyant pas reconnaître hautement cette grande association (Dumas). 5. Ainsi notre amitié, triomphant à son tour, vaincra la jalousie en cédant à l'amour (Corneille). 6. En disant ces mots, les larmes lui vinrent aux yeux. 7. Le mérite et la vertu sont estimés et recherchés. 8. Quand elle se fut aperçue (154) de son erreur, elle fut toute honteuse. 9. Eux punis, nous pourrons faire admirer au monde la liberté (Ponsard). 10. Cette disposition faite, nous entrâmes dans la salle de réception. 11. J'évitais une grêle de coups qui seraient tombés sur moi. 12. Mon âme demeure suspendue.

Vocabulary.

vivre, to live.
devoir, to owe, ought.
tirer, to draw, take.
se porter, to carry one's self, be.
mis, from mettre, to place.
puis, from pouvoir, to be able.
éprouver, to experience.
reconnaître, to recognize.
vaincre, to conquer.
céder, to give way.
disant, from dire, to say.
vinrent, from venir, to come.

estimer, to esteem.
le barbier, the barber.
larmes, tears.
la grêle, hail.
suspendre, to suspend.
demeurer, to remain.
tomber, to fall.
éviter, to avoid.
entrer, to enter.
pourrons, from pouvoir.
aperçu, from apercevoir.
rechercher, to seek for.

EXERCISE 43.

Sec. 186, 3–5.—Perfect Participle continued.

1. Quelle guerre intestine avons nous allumée ! 2. L'évêque de Meaux a créé une langue que lui seul a parlée.

3. La traduction que j'en ai faite, est loin d'atteindre à la force de l'original (Voltaire). 4. Tous les hommes ont toujours quelque petit grain de folie mêlé à leur science (Voltaire). 5. C'est une des idées les plus utiles à la morale qu'il y ait jamais eu. 6. Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai dû, que j'ai pu (lui rendre). 7. Il crut avoir vu des miracles et même en avoir fait. 8. Tout le monde m'a offert des services, et personne ne m'en a rendu. 9. Savez-vous les peines qu'ils ont à souffrir ? 10. Ils se sont présenté des fleurs. 11. Il n'est pas probable que vous eussiez obtenu le consentement de votre père, si je n'avais pas parlé en votre faveur. 12. Je les ai vues frapper. 13. Voilà, mon fils, le sujet des larmes que tu m'a vue verser (Florian). 14. Les airs que je vous ai entendu chanter.

Vocabulary.

allumer, to kindle.
 créer, to create.
 atteindre, to reach, attain.
 mêler, to mix.
 dû, from devoir, to owe.
 pu, from pouvoir, to be able.
 crut, from croire, to believe.
 vu, from voir, to see.
 obtenu, from obtenir, obtain.

verser, to shed.
 l'évêque, bishop.
 la langue, language.
 la traduction, translation.
 la morale, morals, ethics.
 le faveur, favor.
 le sujet, subject.
 larmes, tears.

EXERCISE 44.

Secs. 187-192.—Adverbs.

1. On se repent rarement de parler peu, mais très souvent de parler trop. 2. Cette robe coûte trop cher. 3. Comment vous portez-vous ? Très bien, je vous remercie. 4. L'esprit retourne au ciel, dont il est descendu. 5. Je ne sais plus où j'en suis. 6. La sagesse inutile au monde est pire que certaines folies qui servent au moins à l'amuser. 7. D'ici je ne veux pas sortir, je m'y trouve trop bien. 8. Ce mal lui a pris tout-à-coup, comme il y pensait le moins. 9. La politique a ses martyrs comme la religion, car il y a eu des hommes, dévoués aux principes de la liberté des peuples, qui ont été autant persécutés que les premiers Chrétiens à Rome. 10. Il est de bles-

sures dont un cœur généreux peut rarement guérir (Voltaire). 11. Un vieillard amoureux mérite qu'on en rie. 12. Comme le soleil chasse les ténèbres, ainsi la science chasse l'erreur (Acad.).

Vocabulary.

comment, how?
 comme, as, how.
 très, very.
 pire, worse.
 au moins, at least.
 car, for.
 dévouer, to devote.

autant que, as much as.
 guérir, to heal, recover.
 rier, to laugh.
 la blessure, wound.
 le vieillard, old man.
 ténèbres, shades, shadows.

EXERCISE 45.

Secs. 193-194.—Negatives.—“Ne.”

1. Je ne puis point, à la vérité, ne point admirer leur courage, mais je ne puis aussi ne pas sentir la plaie cruelle que leur mort a faite à mon cœur, et ne point haïr et détester les Athéniens, auteurs de cette malheureuse guerre (Rollin). 2. Je n'ai vu, de ma vie, un tel homme. 3. Je n'en dirai rien à personne. 4. Je ne sais (155) ce que c'est. 5. Il n'y a de puissance que dans la conviction. 6. Je ne dois (154, N.), ni ne veux (155), ni ne puis (155) vous obéir. 7. Le domestique n'est pas encore rentré, ni le chien non plus. 8. Je vais vous rapporter le fait, mais n'en soufflez mot à âme qui vive. 9. Il n'est toujours bon d'être trop politique (Rotrou). 10. Je n'ai jamais rien accordé à la menace (Scribe). 11. Elle n'est ni belle ni riche. 12. Suspendez votre marche. Il ne faut tenter Dieu (De Vigny). 13. Il ne sait ce qu'il veut. 14. Nous n'avions guère que neuf ans.

Vocabulary.

sentir, to feel.
 haïr, to hate.
 tel, such.
 sais, from savoir, know.
 dois, “ devoir, owe.
 puis, “ pouvoir, be able.
 veux, “ vouloir, wish.

vais, from aller, go.
 la plaie, injury.
 la guerre, war.
 la vie, life.
 rapporter, to relate.
 souffler, to breathe.
 tenter, to tempt.

EXERCISE 46.

Secs. 195-196.—Negatives continued.

1. Non, non, le consulat n'est point fait pour son âge.
2. Aucun n'est prophète chez soi. 3. Je serais morte avant qu'il n'entre. 4. Ne craignez-vous pas que monsieur le duc ne reconnaisse que c'est vous-même? 5. Prends garde qu'on ne te voie. 6. Un chrétien doit aimer, non seulement ses amis, mais même ses ennemis. 7. Prendrai-je cela? Non pas, s'il vous plait. 8. La patrie est plus digne de respect que père ni mère. 9. Il doit appréhender que cette occasion ne lui échappe (La Bruyère). 10. Craignez (153) que le ciel rigoureux ne vous hâisse assez pour exaucer vos vœux (Racine). 11. Elle ne redoutait pas moins que le peuple ne la rendît responsable (Thierry). 12. Évitez qu'il ne vous parle. 13. Doutez-vous que mes vœux ne soient honorables? (Dumas). 14. Il ne s'en faut pas de beaucoup que la somme n'y soit (Gram. Nationale). 15. Que leur tête soit livrée à l'expiation, si vous n'aimez mieux que l'expiation retombe sur votre tête (Thierry). 16. Elle ne voyait aucun être souffrant sans que son visage n'exprimât la peine qu'elle en ressentait (St. Pierre). 17. J'entends le philosophe et non l'homme d'état (Ponsard). 18. Que je me trompe ou non, respectez ma chère mère (Ségur). 19. Est-il un seul de vous qui ne tremble pour lui?

Vocabulary.

chez soi, at home.
 avant que, before that.
 échapper, to escape.
 craindre, to fear.
 éviter, to avoid.
 livrer, to give up.
 ressentir, to experience.
 entendre, to hear.

entrer, to enter.
 garde, care.
 plait, from plaire, to please.
 exaucer, to grant.
 redouter, to doubt.
 retomber, to return, recoil.
 exprimer, to express.
 se tromper, to be mistaken

No Exercises are given on the last two Sections.

THE END.





STANDARD EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

Sauveur. Introduction to Teaching. 12mo. Paper.....	\$0 25
— Entretiens sur la Grammaire. 12mo.....	1 75
— Causeries avec mes Éléves. 12mo. Illustrated.....	1 50
— Petites Causeries. 12mo.....	1 25
— Causeries avec les Enfants. 12mo.....	1 25
— Fables de la Fontaine. 12mo.....	1 50
Urbino Series (for translating English into French). 16mo.....	60
Witcomb and Bellenger. French Conversation. 18mo.....	65
Zender. Abécédaire. French and English Primer. 12mo. Boards.....	50

GERMAN.

The prices are for paper covers, unless otherwise expressed.

Andersen. Bilderbuch ohne Bilder. With Notes. 12mo.....	\$0 50
— Die Eisjungfrau, etc. With Notes. 12mo.....	50
Carove. Das Maerchen ohne Ende.....	25
Evans. Otto's German Reader. Half roan.....	1 40
— Deutsche Literaturgeschichte. 12mo. Cloth.....	1 50
Eichendorff. Aus dem Leben eines Taugenichts. 12mo.....	75
Elz. Three German Comedies. 12mo.....	50
Fouque. Undine. With Vocabulary. 12mo.....	50
Goethe. Egmont. With Notes.....	50
— Iphigenie auf Tauris. With Notes. 12mo.....	35
— Herrman und Dorothea. With Notes. 12mo.....	35
Grimm. Venus von Milo; Raphael und Michael Angelo, 12mo.....	1 75
Heness. Der Leitfaden. 12mo. Cloth.....	1 50
Heyse. Anfang und Ende. 12mo.....	30
— Die Einsamen. 12mo.....	30
Keetels. Oral Method with German. 12mo. Half roan.....	1 60
Koerner. Zriny. With Notes.....	60
Klemm. Lese und Sprachbuecher. 12mo. Boards. Kreis I., 30 cts. ; Kreis II., 35 cts. ; Kreis III., 40 cts. ; Kreis IV., 45 cts. ; Kreis V., 50 cts. ; Kreis VI., 55 cts. ; Kreis VII., 75 cts. ; Kreis VIII.....	95
Krauss. Introductory German Grammar. 12mo. Cloth.....	95
Lessing. Minna von Barnhelm. In English, with German Notes. 12mo..	50
— Emilia Galotti. 12mo.....	40
Lodeman. German Conversation Tables. 12mo. Boards.....	35
Mügge. Riikan Voss. 12mo.....	35
— Signa die Seterin. 12mo.....	35
Nathusius. Tagebuch eines Armen Fraeuleins. 12mo.....	75
Otto. German Grammar. 12mo. Roan, \$1.60; Key.....	75
— Evans' German Reader. With Notes and Vocab. 12mo. Roan...	1 40
— First Book in German. 12mo. Boards.....	35
— Introductory Lessons; or, Beginning German. 12mo. Cloth.....	95
— Introductory Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo. Cloth.	1 20
— Translating English into German.....	50
Prinzessin Ilse. With Notes. 12mo.....	50
Putlitz. Was sich der Wald Erzaeht. 12mo.....	50
— Badekuren. With Notes. 12mo.....	50
— Das Herz Vergessen. With Notes. 12mo.....	35
— Vergissmeinnicht. With Notes. 12mo.....	50
Schiller. Jungfrau von Orleans, With Notes. 12mo.....	50
— Wallenstein's Lager. With Notes. 12mo.....	50
— Die Piccolomini. With Notes. 12mo.....	50
— Wallenstein's Tod. With Notes. 12mo.....	50

YB 12434

STANDARD EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

Schiller. Wallenstein. Complete. 12mo. Cloth.....	\$1 50
— Maria Stuart. With Notes. 12mo.....	60
— Der Neffe als Onkel. With Notes and Vocabulary.....	50
Simonson. German Ballad Book. With Notes. 12mo. Cloth.....	1 40
Sprechen Sie Deutsch? or, Do You Speak German? 18mo. Boards.....	50
Storme. Eaay German Reading. 16mo. Cloth.....	95
— Immensee. With Notes. 12mo.....	35
Tieck. Die Elfen. Das Rothkaeppchen. With Notes. 12mo.....	60
Whitney. Prof. W. D. German Grammar. 12mo. Roan.....	1 75
— Prof. W. D. German Reader. 12mo. Roan.....	2 00
— German-English and English-German Dictionary. 12mo. Cloth....	
— German Texts :—Annotated by leading instructors and edited by Prof. W. D. Whitney. 12mo. Cloth. I. Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm, 95 cts.—II. Schiller's Wilhelm Tell, \$1.15—III. Goethe's Faust.—IV. Schiller's Maria Stuart.....	
Wilhelmi. Einer muss heirathen, and Benedix, Eigensinn. 12mo.....	35
Witcomb and Otto's German Conversations. By L. Plyodet. 18mo. Cloth	65

L A T I N .

Ammen. Beginner's Latin Grammar. 12mo. Cloth.....	\$ 95
Wiley. The Ordo Series of Classics. 12mo. : Cæsar's Gallic War, \$1.20; Cicero's Select Orations, \$1.40; Virgil's Æneid, \$1.60; Dictionary... 1 25	

I T A L I A N .

Quore. Italian Grammar. 12mo. Roan \$1.50; Key.....	\$ 75
Ongaro. La Rosa Dell' Alpi. With Notes. 12mo. Paper.....	75
James and Grassi. Italian-English Dictionary. 8vo. Half roan.....	2 00

9842

J 33

77336

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

